PREFACE

Introduction

The 2020 City of Boulder Energy Conservation Code (COBECC) prescribes minimum energy efficiency and conservation standards for new buildings and for additions and alterations to existing buildings. The requirements of the COBECC are intended to promote public health, safety and welfare by requiring the design and construction of buildings in the City of Boulder consistent with the city’s energy, climate and sustainability goals; national safety standards; and best practices for engineering and construction technology.

The COBECC introduces new energy efficiency measures and improves the energy performance requirements for residential buildings and prescriptive requirements for commercial buildings.

The COBECC is based on the 2018 edition of the International Energy Conservation Code® (IECC®), published by the International Code Council® (ICC®), and incorporates local amendments to the model code. The COBECC eliminates portions of the model code that do not apply to Boulder and incorporates Boulder’s local energy conservation requirements in one document.

Since 1996, the city has adopted local amendments to the IECC to impose more stringent energy efficiency requirements than the model code. Like previous local amendments, the COBECC imposes more stringent energy efficiency requirements than the model code. The COBECC requirements support the climate commitment goals adopted by City Council on December 6, 2016:

- 80 percent reduction of the community’s greenhouse gas emissions below 2005 levels by 2050.
- 100 percent renewable electricity by 2030.
- 80 percent reduction in organizational greenhouse gas emissions below 2008 levels by 2030.

In support of these goals, Boulder has set a target of reaching net zero energy construction by 2031 for new buildings and major alterations through building and energy code requirements. Boulder has developed a strategy to achieve that target; adopting increasingly aggressive energy codes is a key part of the strategy.

Adoption

The 2020 City of Boulder Energy Conservation Code was adopted at fourth reading by the City Council of the City of Boulder on March 4, 2020, with the passage of City of Boulder Ordinance No. 8366.

Information regarding the adoption of Ordinance No. 8366 can be reviewed at the City of Boulder Central Records Office as part of the City Council agenda materials for March 4, 2020.
Marginal Markings

| = Indicates a City of Boulder amendment has been made to the 2018 *International Energy Conservation Code*. |
| > = Indicates model code language deleted by the City of Boulder. |

Italicized Terms

Selected words and terms defined in Chapter 2, Definitions, are italicized where they appear in code text and the Chapter 2 definition applies. Where such words and terms are not italicized, common-use definitions apply. The words and terms selected have code-specific definitions that the user should read carefully to facilitate better understanding of the code.
EFFECTIVE USE OF THE
INTERNATIONAL ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE

The 2020 City of Boulder Energy Conservation Code (COBECC) is a model code that regulates minimum energy conservation requirements for new buildings. This code addresses energy conservation requirements for all aspects of energy uses in both commercial and residential construction, including heating and ventilating, lighting, water heating, and power usage for appliances and building systems.

This code is a design document. For example, before one constructs a building, the designer must determine the minimum insulation $R$-values and fenestration $U$-factors for the building exterior envelope. Depending on whether the building is for residential use or for commercial use, the COBECC sets forth minimum requirements for exterior envelope insulation, window and door $U$-factors and SHGC ratings, duct insulation, lighting and power efficiency, and water distribution insulation.

Arrangement and Format of the 2020 COBECC

The COBECC contains two separate sets of provisions—one for commercial buildings and one for residential buildings. Each set of provisions is applied separately to buildings within their scope. The Commercial Provisions apply to all buildings except for residential buildings three stories or less in height. The Residential Provisions apply to detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings as well as Group R-3 and R-4 buildings three stories or less in height. These scopes are based on the definitions of "Commercial building" and "Residential building," respectively, in Chapter 2 of each set of provisions. Note that the Commercial Provisions therefore contain provisions for residential buildings four stories or greater in height. Each set of provisions is divided into five different parts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>Subjects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>Administration and definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Climate zones and general materials requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Energy efficiency requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Existing buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Referenced standards</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is a chapter-by-chapter synopsis of the scope and intent of the provisions of the City of Boulder International Energy Conservation Code and applies to both the commercial and residential energy provisions:

Chapter 1 Scope and Administration. This chapter contains provisions for the application, enforcement and administration of subsequent requirements of the code. In addition to establishing the scope of the code, Chapter 1 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview. Chapter 1 is largely concerned with maintaining "due process of law" in enforcing the energy conservation criteria contained in the body of this code. Only through careful observation of the administrative provisions can the code official reasonably expect to demonstrate that "equal protection under the law" has been provided.
Chapter 2 Definitions. Chapter 2 is the repository of the definitions of terms used in the body of the code. Codes are technical documents and every word, term and punctuation mark can impact the meaning of the code text and the intended results. The code often uses terms that have a unique meaning in the code and the code meaning can differ substantially from the ordinarily understood meaning of the term as used outside of the code.

The terms defined in Chapter 2 are deemed to be of prime importance in establishing the meaning and intent of the code text. The user of the code should be familiar with and consult this chapter because the definitions are essential to the correct interpretation of the code and the user may not be aware that a term is defined.

Where understanding of a term’s definition is especially key to or necessary for understanding of a particular code provision, the term is shown in italics. This is true only for those terms that have a meaning that is unique to the code. In other words, the generally understood meaning of a term or phrase might not be sufficient or consistent with the meaning prescribed by the code; therefore, it is essential that the code-defined meaning be known.

Guidance regarding tense, gender and plurality of defined terms as well as guidance regarding terms not defined in this code is provided.

Chapter 3 General Requirements. Chapter 3 provides interior design conditions that are used as a basis for assumptions in heating and cooling load calculations, and provides basic material requirements for insulation materials and fenestration materials.

Chapter 4 Energy Efficiency. Chapter 4 of each set of provisions contains the technical requirements for energy efficiency.

Commercial Energy Efficiency. Chapter 4 of the Commercial Provisions contains the energy-efficiency-related requirements for the design and construction of most types of commercial buildings and residential buildings greater than three stories in height above grade. This chapter defines requirements for the portions of the building and building systems that impact energy use in new commercial construction and new residential construction greater than three stories in height, and promotes the effective use of energy. In addition to energy conservation requirements for the building envelope, this chapter contains requirements that impact energy efficiency for the HVAC systems, the electrical systems and the plumbing systems. It should be noted, however, that requirements are contained in other codes that have an impact on energy conservation. For instance, requirements for water flow rates are regulated by the International Plumbing Code.

Residential Energy Efficiency. Chapter 4 of the Residential Provisions contains the energy-efficiency-related requirements for the design and construction of residential buildings regulated under this code. It should be noted that the definition of a residential building in this code is unique for this code. In this code, a residential building is a detached one- and two-family dwelling and multiple single-family dwellings as well as R-3 or R-4 buildings three stories or less in height. All other buildings, including residential buildings greater than three stories in height, are regulated by the energy conservation requirements in the Commercial Provisions. The applicable portions of a residential building must comply with the provisions within this chapter for energy efficiency. This chapter defines requirements for the portions of the building and building systems that impact energy use in new residential construction and promotes the effective use of energy. The provisions within the chapter promote energy efficiency in the building envelope, the heating and cooling system and the service water heating system of the building.

Chapter 5 Existing Buildings. Chapter 5 of each set of provisions contains the technical energy efficiency requirements for existing buildings. Chapter 5 provisions address the maintenance of buildings in compliance with the code as well as how additions, alterations, repairs and changes of occupancy need to be addressed from the standpoint of energy efficiency. Specific provisions are provided for historic buildings.
Chapter 6 Referenced Standards. The code contains numerous references to standards that are used to regulate materials and methods of construction. Chapter 6 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in the code. The standards are part of the code to the extent of the reference to the standard. Compliance with the referenced standard is necessary for compliance with this code. By providing specifically adopted standards, the construction and installation requirements necessary for compliance with the code can be readily determined. The basis for code compliance is, therefore, established and available on an equal basis to the code official, contractor, designer and owner.

Chapter 6 is organized in a manner that makes it easy to locate specific standards. It lists all of the referenced standards, alphabetically, by acronym of the promulgating agency of the standard. Each agency's standards are then listed in either alphabetical or numeric order based on the standard identification. The list also contains the title of the standard; the edition (date) of the standard referenced; any addenda included as part of the ICC adoption; and the section or sections of this code that reference the standard.

Abbreviations and Notations

The following is a list of common abbreviations and units of measurement used in this code. Some of the abbreviations are for terms defined in Chapter 2. Others are terms used in various tables and text of the code.

- AFUE: Annual fuel utilization efficiency
- bhp: Brake horsepower (fans)
- Btu: British thermal unit
- Btu/h-ft²: Btu per hour per square foot
- C-factor: See Chapter 2—Definitions
- CDD: Cooling degree days
- cfm: Cubic feet per minute
- cfm/ft²: Cubic feet per minute per square foot
- ci: Continuous insulation
- COP: Coefficient of performance
- DCV: Demand control ventilation
- °C: Degrees Celsius
- °F: Degrees Fahrenheit
- DWHR: Drain water heat recovery
- DX: Direct expansion
- Ec: Combustion efficiency
- Ev: Ventilation efficiency
- Et: Thermal efficiency
- EER: Energy efficiency ratio
- EF: Energy factor
- ERI: Energy rating index
- F-factor: See Chapter 2—Definitions
- FDD: Fault detection and diagnostics
- FEG: Fan efficiency grade
- FL: Full load
- ft²: Square foot
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gpm</td>
<td>Gallons per minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDD</td>
<td>Heating degree days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hp</td>
<td>Horsepower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSPF</td>
<td>Heating seasonal performance factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HVAC</td>
<td>Heating, ventilating and air conditioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEER</td>
<td>Integrated energy efficiency ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPLV</td>
<td>Integrated Part Load Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kg/m²</td>
<td>Kilograms per square meter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kW</td>
<td>Kilowatt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPD</td>
<td>Light power density (lighting power allowance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L/s</td>
<td>Liters per second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ls</td>
<td>Liner system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m²</td>
<td>Square meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MERV</td>
<td>Minimum efficiency reporting value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAECA</td>
<td>National Appliance Energy Conservation Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPLV</td>
<td>Nonstandard Part Load Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pa</td>
<td>Pascal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PF</td>
<td>Projection factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pcf</td>
<td>Pounds per cubic foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psf</td>
<td>Pounds per square foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTAC</td>
<td>Packaged terminal air conditioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTHP</td>
<td>Packaged terminal heat pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-value</td>
<td>See Chapter 2—Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCOP</td>
<td>Sensible coefficient of performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEER</td>
<td>Seasonal energy efficiency ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHGC</td>
<td>Solar Heat Gain Coefficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPVAC</td>
<td>Single packaged vertical air conditioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPVHP</td>
<td>Single packaged vertical heat pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRI</td>
<td>Solar reflectance index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWHF</td>
<td>Service water heat recovery factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U-factor</td>
<td>See Chapter 2—Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAV</td>
<td>Variable air volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VRF</td>
<td>Variable refrigerant flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VT</td>
<td>Visible transmittance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Watts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w.c.</td>
<td>Water column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w.g.</td>
<td>Water gauge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**COMMERCIAL PROVISIONS** ................. C-1  **RESIDENTIAL PROVISIONS** ................. R-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Scope and Administration</td>
<td>C-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>C-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>General Requirements</td>
<td>C-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Commercial Energy Efficiency</td>
<td>C-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Existing Buildings</td>
<td>C-81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Referenced Standards</td>
<td>C-85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appendix</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CA</td>
<td>Solar-Ready Zone—Commercial (See Section C406)</td>
<td>C-93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INDEX** ................. C-95

---

**RESIDENTIAL PROVISIONS** ................. R-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Scope and Administration</td>
<td>R-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>R-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>General Requirements</td>
<td>R-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Residential Energy Efficiency</td>
<td>R-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Existing Buildings</td>
<td>R-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Referenced Standards</td>
<td>R-31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appendix</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RA</td>
<td>Solar-Ready Provisions—Detached One- and Two-Family Dwellings and Townhouses (See Section R407)</td>
<td>R-35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INDEX** ................. R-37
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 1  SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION ...........C-3**

**PART 1— SCOPE AND APPLICATION ...........C-3**

Section
C101 Scope and General Requirements. ............C-3  
C102 Alternative Materials, Design and Methods of Construction and Equipment ............C-3

**PART 2— ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT .............C-3**

Section
C103 Construction Documents. .................C-3  
C104 Fees. ..................................C-5  
C105 Inspections. ..............................C-5  
C106 Validity. ..................................C-5  
C107 Referenced Standards. ...................C-6  
C108 Stop Work Order. .........................C-6  
C109 Board of Appeals. .........................C-6

**CHAPTER 2  DEFINITIONS ....................C-7**

Section
C201 General. .................................C-7  
C202 General Definitions. ...................C-7

**CHAPTER 3  GENERAL REQUIREMENTS .....C-15**

Section
C301 Climate Zones. .............................C-15  
C302 Design Conditions. ............................C-15  
C303 Materials, Systems and Equipment ..............C-15

**CHAPTER 4  COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY .............C-17**

Section
C401 General. .................................C-17  
C402 Building Envelope Requirements. .............C-17  
C403 Building Mechanical Systems. ................C-25  
C404 Service Water Heating (Mandatory). ............C-53  
C405 Electrical Power and Lighting Systems. ..........C-57  
C406 Solar Readiness. ............................C-72  
C407 Total Building Performance. .................C-73  
C408 Maintenance Information and System Commissioning. .............C-76

**CHAPTER 5  EXISTING BUILDINGS ..........C-81**

Section
C501 General. .................................C-81  
C502 Additions. .................................C-81  
C503 Alterations. ...............................C-82  
C504 Repairs. .................................C-83  
C505 Change of Occupancy or Use. .................C-84

**CHAPTER 6  REFERENCED STANDARDS .....C-85**

**APPENDIX CA  SOLAR-READY ZONE—COMMERCIAL (See Section C 406) .............C-93**

**INDEX .....................C-95**
CHAPTER 1 [CE]

SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

User note:

About this chapter: Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts: Part 1—Scope and Application and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement. Section 101 identifies what buildings, systems, appliances and equipment fall under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced.

The code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION C101

SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

C 101.1 Title. This code shall be known as the 2020 City of Boulder Energy Conservation Code and shall be cited as such. It is referred to herein as “this code.”

C 101.2 Scope. This code applies to commercial buildings and the buildings’ sites and associated systems and equipment.

C 101.3 Intent. This code shall regulate the design and construction of buildings for the effective use and conservation of energy over the useful life of each building. This code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

C 101.4 Applicability. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.

C 101.4.1 Mixed residential and commercial buildings. Where a building includes both residential building and commercial building portions, each portion shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions or IECC—Residential Provisions.


C 101.5.1 Compliance materials. The code official shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this code.

SECTION C102

ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

C 102.1 General. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been approved. An alternative material, design or method of construction shall be approved where the code official finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not approved, the code official shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not approved.

C 102.1.1 Above code programs. The code official or other authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to deem a national, state or local energy efficiency program to exceed the energy efficiency required by this code. Buildings approved in writing by such an energy efficiency program shall be considered to be in compliance with this code. The requirements identified as “mandatory” in Chapter 4 shall be met.

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

SECTION C103

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

C 103.1 General. Construction documents and other supporting data shall be submitted in one or more sets with each application for a permit. The construction documents shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Where special conditions exist, the code official is authorized to require necessary construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.

Exception: The code official is authorized to waive the requirements for construction documents or other supporting data if the code official determines they are not necessary to confirm compliance with this code.
C 103.2 Information on construction documents. Construction documents shall be drawn to scale on suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where approved by the code official. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed, and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the building, systems and equipment as herein governed. Details shall include, but are not limited to, the following as applicable:

1. Insulation materials and their R-values.
2. Fenestration U-factors and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGCs).
3. Area-weighted U-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) calculations.
4. Mechanical system design criteria.
5. Mechanical and service water heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.
7. Equipment and system controls.
8. Fan motor horsepower (hp) and controls.
9. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.
10. Lighting fixture schedule with wattage and control narrative.
11. Location of daylight zones on floor plans.
12. Air sealing details.

C 103.2.1 Building thermal envelope depiction. The building thermal envelope shall be represented on the construction drawings.

C 103.3 Examination of documents. The code official shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying construction documents and shall ascertain whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances. The code official is authorized to utilize a registered design professional, or other approved entity not affiliated with the building design or construction, in conducting the review of the plans and specifications for compliance with the code.

C 103.3.1 Approval of construction documents. When the code official issues a permit where construction documents are required, the construction documents shall be endorsed in writing and stamped “Reviewed for Code Compliance.” Such approved construction documents shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the code official. Work shall be done in accordance with the approved construction documents.

One set of construction documents so reviewed shall be retained by the code official. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, kept at the site of work and shall be open to inspection by the code official or a duly authorized representative.

C 103.3.2 Previous approvals. This code shall not require changes in the construction documents, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful permit has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

C 103.3.3 Phased approval. The code official shall have the authority to issue a permit for the construction of part of an energy conservation system before the construction documents for the entire system have been submitted or approved, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this code. The holders of such permit shall proceed at their own risk without assurance that the permit for the entire energy conservation system will be granted.

C 103.4 Amended construction documents. Changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the approved construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents.

C 103.5 Retention of construction documents. One set of approved construction documents shall be retained by the code official for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws.

C 103.6 Building documentation and closeout submittal requirements. The construction documents shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner’s authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the certificate of occupancy.

C 103.6.1 Record documents. Construction documents shall be updated to convey a record of the completed work. Such updates shall include mechanical, electrical and control drawings that indicate all changes to size, type and location of components, equipment and assemblies.

C 103.6.2 Compliance documentation. Energy code compliance documentation and supporting calculations shall be delivered in one document to the building owner as part of the project record documents or manuals, or as a standalone document. This document shall include the specific energy code edition utilized for compliance determination for each system, documentation demonstrating compliance with Section C303.1.3 for each fenestration product installed, and the interior lighting power compliance path, building area or space-by-space, used to calculate the lighting power allowance.

For projects complying with Item 2 of Section C401.2, the documentation shall include:

1. The envelope insulation compliance path.
2. All compliance calculations including those required by Sections C402.1.5, C403.8.1, C405.3 and C405.4.

For projects complying with Section C407, the documentation shall include that required by Sections C407.4.1 and C407.4.2.

C 103.6.3 Systems operation control. Training shall be provided to those responsible for maintaining and operating equipment included in the manuals required by Section C103.6.2.

The training shall include:

1. Review of manuals and permanent certificate.
2. Hands-on demonstration of all normal maintenance procedures, normal operating modes, and all emergency shutdown and startup procedures.
3. Training completion report.
SECTION C104
FEES

C 104.1 Fees. A permit shall not be issued until the fees prescribed in Section C104.2 have been paid, nor shall an amendment to a permit be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.

C 104.2 Schedule of permit fees. A fee for each permit shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.

C 104.3 Work commencing before permit issuance. Any person who commences any work before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to an additional fee established by the code official that shall be in addition to the required permit fees.

C 104.4 Related fees. The payment of the fee for the construction, alteration, removal or demolition of work done in connection to or concurrently with the work or activity authorized by a permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.

C 104.5 Refunds. The code official is authorized to establish a refund policy.

SECTION C105
INSPECTIONS

C 105.1 General. Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the code official, his or her designated agent or an approved agency, and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until approved. A approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of any violation of the provisions of this code or of any ordinances of the jurisdiction. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of any ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes. Neither the code official nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for any expense related to such work.

C 105.2 Required inspections. The code official, his or her designated agent or an approved agency, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in Sections C105.2.1 through C105.2.6.

C 105.2.1 Footing and foundation insulation. Inspections shall verify the footing and foundation insulation R-value, location, thickness, depth of burial and protection of insulation as required by the code, approved plans and specifications.

C 105.2.2 Thermal envelope. Inspections shall verify the correct type of insulation, R-values, location of insulation, fenestration, U-factor, SHGC and VT, and that air leakage controls are properly installed, as required by the code, approved plans and specifications.

C 105.2.3 Plumbing system. Inspections shall verify the type of insulation, R-values, protection required, controls and heat traps as required by the code, approved plans and specifications.

C 105.2.4 Mechanical system. Inspections shall verify the installed HVAC equipment for the correct type and size, controls, insulation, R-values, system and damper air leakage, minimum fan efficiency, energy recovery and economizer as required by the code, approved plans and specifications.

C 105.2.5 Electrical system. Inspections shall verify lighting system controls, components, and meters as required by the code, approved plans and specifications.

C 105.2.6 Final inspection. The final inspection shall include verification of the installation and proper operation of all required building controls, and documentation verifying activities associated with required building commissioning have been conducted in accordance with Section C408.

C 105.3 Reinspection. A building shall be reinspected where determined necessary by the code official.

C 105.4 Approved inspection agencies. The code official is authorized to accept reports of third-party inspection agencies not affiliated with the building design or construction, provided that such agencies are approved as to qualifications and reliability relevant to the building components and systems that they are inspecting.

C 105.5 Inspection requests. It shall be the duty of the holder of the permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the code official when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.

C 105.6 Reinspection and testing. Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the code official for inspection and testing.

C 105.7 Approval. After the prescribed tests and inspections indicate that the work complies in all respects with this code, a notice of approval shall be issued by the code official.

C 105.7.1 Revocation. The code official is authorized to suspend or revoke, in writing, a notice of approval issued under the provisions of this code wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the building or structure, premise, or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

SECTION C106
VALIDITY

C 106.1 General. If a portion of this code is held to be illegal or void, such a decision shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this code.
SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

SECTION C107
REFERRED STANDARDS

C107.1 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those listed in Chapter 6, and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections C107.1.1 and C107.1.2.

C107.1.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

C107.1.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

C107.2 Application of references. References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

C107.3 Other laws. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

SECTION C108
STOP WORK ORDER

C108.1 Authority. Where the code official finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner either contrary to the provisions of this code or dangerous or unsafe, the code official is authorized to issue a stop work order.

C108.2 Issuance. The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property involved, the owner’s authorized agent, or to the person doing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work will be permitted to resume.

C108.3 Emergencies. Where an emergency exists, the code official shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.

C108.4 Failure to comply. Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be liable to a fine as set by the applicable governing authority.

SECTION C109
BOARD OF APPEALS

C109.1 General. In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the code official relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The code official shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall not have a vote on any matter before the board. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the governing body and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business, and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the code official.

C109.2 Limitations on authority. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code.

C109.3 Qualifications. The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training and are not employees of the jurisdiction.
CHAPTER 2 [CE]
DEFINITIONS

User note:

About this chapter: Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code. Chapter 2 performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purposes of the code.

SECTION C201
GENERAL

C 201.1 Scope. Unless stated otherwise, the following words and terms in this code shall have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

C 201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural includes the singular.

C 201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Terms that are not defined in this code but are defined in the International Building Code, International Fire Code, International Fuel Gas Code, International Mechanical Code, International Plumbing Code or the International Residential Code shall have the meanings ascribed to them in those codes.

C 201.4 Terms not defined. Terms not defined by this chapter shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION C202
GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ABOVE-GRADE WALL. See “Wall, above-grade.”

ACCESS (TO), That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be reached by ready access or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel, or similar obstruction.

ADDITION, An extension or increase in the conditioned space floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure.

AIR BARRIER, One or more materials joined together in a continuous manner to restrict or prevent the passage of air through the building thermal envelope and its assemblies.

AIR CURTAIN. A device, installed at the building entrance, that generates and discharges a laminar air stream intended to prevent the infiltration of external, unconditioned air into the conditioned spaces, or the loss of interior, conditioned air to the outside.

ALL-ELECTRIC BUILDING. A building that uses a permanent supply of electricity as the source of energy for all space heating, water heating (including pools and spas), cooking appliances, and clothes drying appliances, and has no natural gas or propane plumbing installed in the building.

ALTERATION. Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition. Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

ALTERATION, LEVEL 1. A change that includes the removal and replacement or the covering of existing materials, elements, equipment or fixtures using new materials, elements, equipment or fixtures that serve the same purpose.

ALTERATION, LEVEL 2. A change that includes the reconfiguration of space, the addition or elimination of any door or window, the reconfiguration or extension of any system, or the installation of any additional equipment.

ALTERATION, LEVEL 3. A change where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area.

ALTERATION, LEVEL 4. A change where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area, mechanical and lighting systems are substantially replaced, and the alteration meets the criteria of substantial structural alteration, including fenestration replacement.

APPROVED. A condition acceptable to the code official.

APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, or furnishing product certification, where such agency has been approved by the code official.

AUTOMATIC. Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration (see “Manual”).

BELOW-GRADE WALL. See “Wall, below-grade.”

BOILER, MODULATING. A boiler that is capable of more than a single firing rate in response to a varying temperature or heating load.

BOILER SYSTEM. One or more boilers, their piping and controls that work together to supply steam or hot water to heat output devices remote from the boiler.

BUBBLE POINT. The refrigerant liquid saturation temperature at a specified pressure.

BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy, including any mechanical systems, service water heating systems and electric power and lighting systems located on the building site and supporting the building.

BUILDING COMMISSIONING. A process that verifies and documents that the selected building systems have been designed, installed, and function according to the owner’s project requirements and construction documents, and to minimum code requirements.

2020 CITY OF BOULDER ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE C-7

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym “ICC” and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
DEFINITIONS

BUILDING ENTRANCE. Any door, set of doors, doorway, or other form of portal that is used to gain access to the building from the outside by the public.

BUILDING SITE. A contiguous area of land that is under the ownership or control of one entity.

BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE. The basement walls, exterior walls, floors, ceilings, roofs and any other building element assemblies that enclose conditioned space or provide a boundary between conditioned space and exempt or unconditioned space.

CAPTIVE KEY OVERRIDE. A lighting control that will not release the key that activates the override when the lighting is on.

CAVITY INSULATION. Insulating material located between framing members.

C-FACTOR (THERMAL CONDUCTANCE). The coefficient of heat transmission (surface to surface) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and the unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side surfaces (Btu/h • ft² • °F) [W/(m² • K)].

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY. A change in the use of a building or a portion of a building that results in any of the following:

1. A change of occupancy classification.
2. A change from one group to another group within an occupancy classification.
3. Any change in use within a group for which there is a change in the application of the requirements of this code.

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM. A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to the fixture supply and back to the water-heating equipment.

CLIMATE ZONE. A geographical region based on climatic criteria as specified in this code.

CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP) – COOLING. The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input, in consistent units, for a complete refrigerating system or some specific portion of that system under designated operating conditions.

COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP) – HEATING. The ratio of the rate of heat delivered to the rate of energy input, in consistent units, for a complete heat pump system, including the compressor and, if applicable, auxiliary heat, under designated operating conditions.

COMMERCIAL BUILDING. For this code, all buildings that are not included in the definition of “Residential building.”

COMPUTER ROOM. A room whose primary function is to house equipment for the processing and storage of electronic data and that has a design electronic data equipment power density of less than 20 watts per square foot (20 watts per 0.092 m²) of conditioned floor area or a connected design electronic data equipment load of less than 10 kW.

CONDENSING UNIT. A factory-made assembly of refrigeration components designed to compress and liquefy a specific refrigerant. The unit consists of one or more refrigerant compressors, refrigerant condensers (air-cooled, evaporatively cooled, or water-cooled), condenser fans and motors (where used) and factory-supplied accessories.

CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA. The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the conditioned space.

CONDITIONED SPACE. An area, room or space that is enclosed within the building thermal envelope and is directly or indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

CONSTRUCTION VALUATION. The total value of work requiring building, mechanical, plumbing and electrical permits; to be determined consistent with the standards of Subsection 4-20-4(d), B.R.C. 1981. The higher of the two valuations considered under Subsection 4-20-4(d), B.R.C. 1981, shall be the total value of work.

CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci). Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior or is integral to any opaque surface of the building envelope.

CRAWL SPACE WALL. The opaque portion of a wall that encloses a crawl space and is partially or totally below grade.

CURTAIN WALL. Fenestration products used to create an external non-load-bearing wall that is designed to separate the exterior and interior environments.

DAYLIGHT RESPONSIVE CONTROL. A device or system that provides automatic control of electric light levels based on the amount of daylight in a space.

DAYLIGHT ZONE. That portion of a building’s interior floor area that is illuminated by natural light.

DEMAND CONTROL VENTILATION (DCV). A ventilation system capability that provides for the automatic reduction of outdoor air intake below design rates when the actual occupancy of spaces served by the system is less than design occupancy.

DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM. A water distribution system having one or more recirculation pumps that pump water from a heated water supply pipe back to the heated water source through a cold water supply pipe.

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling equipment and appliances.

DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.
DEFINITIONS

DYNAMIC GLAZING. Any fenestration product that has the fully reversible ability to change its performance properties, including U-factor, solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC), or visible transmittance (VT).

ECONOMIZER, AIR. A duct and damper arrangement and automatic control system that allows a cooling system to supply outside air to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling during mild or cold weather.

ECONOMIZER, WATER. A system where the supply air of a cooling system is cooled indirectly with water that is itself cooled by heat or mass transfer to the environment without the use of mechanical cooling.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV). A motorized vehicle registered for on-road use, powered by an electric motor that draws current from rechargeable storage that is charged by being plugged into an electrical source.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE CAPABLE SPACE. A designated parking space that is provided with conduit sized for a 40-amp, 208/240-volt dedicated branch circuit from a building electrical service panel to the parking space and sufficient physical space in the same building electrical service panel to accommodate a 40-amp dual-pole circuit breaker.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE READY SPACE. A parking space that is provided with one 40-amp, 208/240-volt dedicated branch circuit for electric vehicle supply equipment that is terminated at a receptacle, a junction box or electric vehicle supply equipment within the parking space.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT (EVSE). The electrical conductors and equipment external to the electric vehicle that provide a connection between an electric vehicle and a power source to provide electric vehicle charging.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT (EVSE) INSTALLED SPACE. A parking space with electric vehicle supply equipment capable of supplying current at 40 amps at 208/240 volt.

ENCLOSED SPACE. A volume surrounded by solid surfaces such as walls, floors, roofs, and openable devices such as doors and operable windows.

ENERGY ANALYSIS. A method for estimating the annual energy use of the proposed design and standard reference design based on estimates of energy use.

ENERGY COST. The total estimated annual cost for purchased energy for the building functions regulated by this code, including applicable demand charges.

ENERGY IMPACT OFFSET FUND. A city-approved and city-managed offset fund providing a payment option in lieu of complying with city program renewable energy and/or offset requirements.

ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEM. Systems that employ air-to-air heat exchangers to recover energy from exhaust air for the purpose of preheating, precooling, humidifying or dehumidifying outdoor ventilation air prior to supplying the air to a space, either directly or as part of an HVAC system.

ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL. An approved software program or calculation-based methodology that projects the annual energy use of a building.

ENERGY USE INTENSITY (EUI). The annual building site energy use per square foot of gross floor area in units of kBtu/sq ft.

ENTRANCE DOOR. A vertical fenestration product used for occupant ingress, egress and access in nonresidential buildings, including, but not limited to, exterior entrances utilizing latching hardware and automatic closers and containing over 50 percent glazing specifically designed to withstand heavy-duty usage.

EQUIPMENT POWER DENSITY (EPD). The power per unit area of equipment serving plug and process loads of the building or space, expressed in W/ft² of building gross floor area.

EQUIPMENT ROOM. A space that contains either electrical equipment, mechanical equipment, machinery, water pumps or hydraulic pumps that are a function of the building’s services.

EXTERIOR WALL. Walls including both above-grade walls and basement walls.

FAN BRAKE HORSEPOWER (BHP). The horsepower delivered to the fan’s shaft. Brake horsepower does not include the mechanical drive losses such as that from belts and gears.

FAN EFFICIENCY GRADE (FEG). A numerical rating identifying the fan’s aerodynamic ability to convert shaft power, or impeller power in the case of a direct-driven fan, to air power.

FAN SYSTEM BHP. The sum of the fan brake horsepower of all fans that are required to operate at fan system design conditions to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the conditioned spaces and return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

FAN SYSTEM DESIGN CONDITIONS. Operating conditions that can be expected to occur during normal system operation that result in the highest supply fan airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system, other than during air economizer operation.

FAN SYSTEM MOTOR NAMEPLATE HP. The sum of the motor nameplate horsepower of all fans that are required to operate at design conditions to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the conditioned spaces and return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

FENESTRATION. Products classified as either skylights or vertical fenestration.

Skylights. Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal, including unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices and glazing materials in solariums, sunrooms, roofs and sloped walls.

Vertical fenestration. Windows that are fixed or operable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque and glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, FIELD-FABRICATED. A fenestration product whose frame is made at the construction site of standard dimensional lumber or other materials that were not previously cut, or otherwise formed with the
DEFINITIONS

specific intention of being used to fabricate a fenestration product or exterior door. Field fabricated does not include site-built fenestration.

**FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT.** A fenestration designed to be made up of field-glazed or field-assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory-formed framing and glazing units. Examples of site-built fenestration include storefront systems, curtain walls, and atrium roof systems.

**F-FACTOR.** The perimeter heat loss factor for slab-on-grade floors \((\text{Btu/h} \cdot \text{ft} \cdot ^\circ\F) \left[ \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m} \cdot \text{K}} \right] \). 

**FLOOR AREA, NET.** The actual occupied area not including unoccupied accessory areas such as corridors, stairways, toilet rooms, mechanical rooms and closets.

**GENERAL LIGHTING.** Lighting that provides a substantially uniform level of illumination throughout an area. General lighting shall not include decorative lighting or lighting that provides a dissimilar level of illumination to serve a specialized application or feature within such area.

**GREENHOUSE.** A structure or a thermally isolated area of a building that maintains a specialized sunlit environment exclusively used for, and essential to, the cultivation, protection or maintenance of plants.

**GROUP R.** Buildings or portions of buildings that contain any of the following occupancies as established in the International Building Code:

1. Group R-1.
2. Group R-2 where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.
3. Group R-4 where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.

**HEAT TRAP.** An arrangement of piping and fittings, such as elbows, or a commercially available heat trap that prevents thermosyphoning of hot water during standby periods.

**HEATED SLAB.** Slab-on-grade construction in which the heating elements, hydronic tubing, or hot air distribution system is in contact with, or placed within or under, the slab.

**HEALTH SPEED DOOR.** A nonswinging door used primarily to facilitate vehicular access or material transportation, with a minimum opening rate of 32 inches (813 mm) per second, a minimum closing rate of 24 inches (610 mm) per second and that includes an automatic-closing device.

**HISTORIC BUILDING.** Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register-listed, state-designated or locally designated historic district.

**HUMIDISTAT.** A regulatory device, actuated by changes in humidity, used for automatic control of relative humidity.

**IEC DESIGN H MOTOR.** An electric motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is an induction motor designed for use with threephase power.
2. It contains a cage rotor.
3. It is capable of direct-on-line starting.
4. It has four, six or eight poles.
5. It is rated from 0.4 kW to 1600 kW at a frequency of 60 hertz.

**IEC DESIGN N MOTOR.** An electric motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is an induction motor designed for use with threephase power.
2. It contains a cage rotor.
3. It is capable of direct-on-line starting.
4. It has two, four, six or eight poles.
5. It is rated from 0.4 kW to 1600 kW at a frequency of 60 hertz.

**INfiltration.** The uncontrolled inward air leakage into a building caused by the pressure effects of wind or the effect of differences in the indoor and outdoor air density or both.

**INTEGRATED PART LOAD VALUE (IPLV).** A single-number figure of merit based on part-load EER, COP or kW/ton expressing part-load efficiency for air-conditioning and heat pump equipment on the basis of weighted operation at various load capacities for equipment.

**ISOLATION DEVICES.** Devices that isolate HVAC zones so that they can be operated independently of one another. Isolation devices include separate systems, isolation dampers, and controls providing shutoff at terminal boxes.

**LABELED.** Equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, approved agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

**LINER SYSTEM (Ls).** A system that includes the following:

1. A continuous vapor barrier liner membrane that is installed below the purlins and that is interrupted by framing members.
2. An uncompressed, unfaced insulation resting on top of the liner membrane and located between the purlins.

For multilayer installations, the last rated R-value of insulation is for unfaced insulation draped over purlins and then compressed when the metal roof panels are attached.

**LISTED.** Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the code official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product...
or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

**LOW-SLOPED ROOF.** A roof having a slope less than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal.

**LOW-VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMER.** A transformer that is air-cooled, does not use oil as a coolant, has an input voltage less than or equal to 600 volts and is rated for operation at a frequency of 60 hertz.

**LUMINAIRE-LEVEL LIGHTING CONTROLS.** A lighting system consisting of one or more luminaires with embedded lighting control logic, occupancy and ambient light sensors, wireless networking capabilities and local override switching capability, where required.

**MANUAL.** Capable of being operated by personal intervention (see "Automatic").

**MIXED-FUEL BUILDING.** A building that uses natural gas or propane as fuel for space heating, water heating (including pools and spas), cooking appliances or clothes drying appliances or is plumbed for such equipment.

**NAMEPLATE HORSEPOWER.** The nominal motor output power rating stamped on the motor nameplate.

**NEMA DESIGN A MOTOR.** A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop locked-rotor torque as shown in paragraph 12.38.1 of NEMA MG 1.
2. It has pull-up torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.40.1 of NEMA MG 1.
3. It has breakdown torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.39.1 of NEMA MG 1.
4. It has a locked-rotor current higher than the values shown in paragraph 12.35.1 of NEMA MG 1 for 60 hertz and paragraph 12.35.2 for 50 hertz.
5. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent for motors with fewer than 10 poles.

**NEMA DESIGN B MOTOR.** A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is designed to withstand full-voltage starting.
2. It develops locked-rotor, breakdown, and pull-up torques adequate for general application as specified in Sections 12.38, 12.39 and 12.40 of NEMA MG 1.
3. It draws locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in Section 12.35.1 for 60 hertz and Section 12.35.2 for 50 hertz of NEMA MG 1.
4. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent for motors with fewer than 10 poles.

**NEMA DESIGN C MOTOR.** A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. Designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop locked-rotor torque for high-torque applications up to the values shown in paragraph 12.38.2 of NEMA MG 1 (incorporated by reference, see AN 431.15).
2. It has pull-up torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.40.2 of NEMA MG 1.
3. It has breakdown torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.39.2 of NEMA MG 1.
4. It has a locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in paragraph 12.35.1 of NEMA MG 1 for 60 hertz and paragraph 12.35.2 for 50 hertz.
5. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent.

**NETWORKED GUESTROOM CONTROL SYSTEM.** A control system, accessible from the front desk or other central location associated with a Group R-1 building, that is capable of identifying the occupancy status of each guestroom according to a timed schedule, and is capable of controlling HVAC in each hotel and motel guestroom separately.

**NONSTANDARD PART LOAD VALUE (NPLV).** A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated and referenced to conditions other than IPLV conditions, for units that are not designed to operate at AHR1 standard rating conditions.

**OCCUPANT SENSOR CONTROL.** An automatic control device or system that detects the presence or absence of people within an area and causes lighting, equipment or appliances to be regulated accordingly.

**ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY.** Energy derived from solar radiation, wind, waves, tides, landfill gas, biogas, biomass or the internal heat of the earth. The energy system providing on-site renewable energy shall be located on the project site.

**OPAQUE DOOR.** A door that is not less than 50-percent opaque in surface area.

**POWERED ROOF/WALL VENTILATORS.** A fan consisting of a centrifugal or axial impeller with an integral driver in a weather-resistant housing and with a base designed to fit, usually by means of a curb, over a wall or roof opening.

**PROPOSED DESIGN.** A description of the proposed building used to estimate annual energy use for determining compliance based on total building performance.

**RADIANT HEATING SYSTEM.** A heating system that transfers heat to objects and surfaces within a conditioned space, primarily by infrared radiation.

**READY ACCESS (TO).** That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be directly reached, without requiring the removal or movement of any panel or similar obstruction.

**REFRIGERANT DEW POINT.** The refrigerant vapor saturation temperature at a specified pressure.

**REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE COOLER.** A space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures above 32°F (0°C), that can be walked into and has a total chilled storage area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m²).

**REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE FREEZER.** An enclosed space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C), that can be walked into and has a total chilled storage area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m²).

**REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, LOW TEMPERATURE.** Systems for maintaining food product in a frozen state in refrigeration applications.
DEFINITIONS

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, MEDIUM TEMPERATURE. Systems for maintaining food product above freezing in refrigeration applications.

REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed.

REPAIR. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

RE-RoOFING. The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See “Roof recover” and “Roof replacement.”

RESIDENTIAL BUILDING. For this code, includes detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, and Group R-3 and R-4 buildings three stories or less in height above grade plane with separate means of egress.

ROOF ASSEMBLY. A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly includes the roof covering, underlayment, roof deck, insulation, vapor retarder and interior finish.

ROOF RECOVER. The process of installing an additional roof covering over an existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

ROOF REPAIR. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purpose of its maintenance.

ROOF REPLACEMENT. The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.

ROOFTOP MONITOR. A raised section of a roof containing vertical fenestration along one or more sides.

R-VALUE (THERMAL RESISTANCE). The inverse of the thermal resistance of a material or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films (Btu/hr °F/ft²) [(m² • K)/W].

SATURATED CONDENSING TEMPERATURE. The saturation temperature corresponding to the measured refrigerant pressure at the condenser inlet for single component and azeotropic refrigerants, and the arithmetic average of the dew point and bubble point temperatures corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance for zeotropic refrigerants.

SERVICE WATER HEATING. Supply of hot water for purposes other than comfort heating.

SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep, that can include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are part of a dwelling unit are not sleeping units.

SMALL ELECTRIC MOTOR. A general purpose, alternating current, single speed induction motor.

SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC). The ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration assembly to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation, that is then reradiated, conducted or convected into the space.

STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN. A version of the proposed design that meets the minimum requirements of this code and is used to determine the maximum annual energy use requirement for compliance based on total building performance.

STOREFRONT. A system of doors and windows mulled as a composite fenestration structure that has been designed to resist heavy use. Storefront systems include, but are not limited to, exterior fenestration systems that span from the floor level or above to the ceiling of the same story on commercial buildings, with or without mulled windows and doors.

SUBSTANTIAL STRUCTURAL ALTERATION. An alteration in which the gravity load-carrying structural elements altered within a five-year period support more than 30 percent of the total floor area and roof area of the building or structure. The areas to be counted toward the 30 percent shall include mezzanines, penthouses, and in-filled courts and shafts tributary to the altered structural elements.

THERMOSTAT. An automatic control device used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

TIME SWITCH CONTROL. An automatic control device or system that controls lighting or other loads, including switching off, based on time schedules.

U-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE). The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films (Btu/hr °F/ft²) [W/(m² • K)].

VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW SYSTEM. An engineered direct-expansion (DX) refrigerant system that incorporates a common condensing unit, at least one variable-capacity compressor, a distributed refrigerant piping network to multiple indoor fan heating and cooling units each capable of individual zone temperature control, through integral zone temperature control devices and a common communications network. Variable refrigerant flow utilizes three or more steps of control on common interconnecting piping.

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. That portion of supply air that comes from outside (outdoors) plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE [VT]. The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light. Visible transmittance includes the effects of glazing material and frame and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.
**Voltage Drop.** A decrease in voltage caused by losses in the wiring systems that connect the power source to the load.

**Walk-In Cooler.** An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures above 32°F (0°C) and less than 55°F (12.8°C) that can be walked into, has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) and has a total chilled storage area of less than 3,000 square feet (279 m²).

**Walk-In Freezer.** An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into, has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) and has a total chilled storage area of less than 3,000 square feet (279 m²).

**Wall, Above-Grade.** A wall associated with the building thermal envelope that is more than 15 percent above grade and is on the exterior of the building or any wall that is associated with the building thermal envelope that is not on the exterior of the building.

**Wall, Below-Grade.** A wall associated with the basement or first story of the building that is part of the building thermal envelope, is not less than 85 percent below grade and is on the exterior of the building.

**Water Heater.** Any heating appliance or equipment that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

**Zone.** A space or group of spaces within a building with heating or cooling requirements that are sufficiently similar so that desired conditions can be maintained throughout using a single controlling device.
CHAPTER 3 [CE]
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

User note:

About this chapter: Chapter 3 addresses broadly applicable requirements that would not be at home in other chapters having more specific coverage of subject matter. This chapter establishes climate zone by U.S. counties and also contains product rating, marking and installation requirements for materials such as insulation, windows, doors and siding.

SECTION C301
CLIMATE ZONES

C301.1 General. This code shall apply only to projects located in Boulder, Colorado.

SECTION C302
DESIGN CONDITIONS

C302.1 Interior design conditions. The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and minimum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

SECTION C303
MATERIALS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

C303.1 Identification. Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

C303.1.1 Building thermal envelope insulation. A R-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of building thermal envelope insulation 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. Alternatively, the insulation installers shall provide a certification listing the type, manufacturer and R-value of insulation installed in each element of the building thermal envelope. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose insulation, the initial installed thickness, settled R-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be listed on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the areas covered and R-value of installed thickness shall be listed on the certification. For insulated siding, the R-value shall be labeled on the product’s package and shall be listed on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

Exception: For roof insulation installed above the deck, the R-value shall be labeled as required by the material standards specified in Table 1508.2 of the International Building Code.

C303.1.1.1 Blown-in or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation. The thickness of blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose roof/ceiling insulation shall be written in inches (mm) on markers and one or more of such markers shall be installed for every 300 square feet (28 m²) of attic area throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic access opening. Spray polyurethane foam thickness and installed R-value shall be listed on certification provided by the insulation installer.

C303.1.2 Insulation mark installation. Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer’s R-value mark is readily observable upon inspection.

C303.1.3 Fenestration product rating. U-factors of fenestration products shall be determined as follows:

1. For windows, doors and skylights, U-factor ratings shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100.

2. Where required for garage doors and rolling doors, U-factor ratings shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105.

U-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer.

Products lacking such a labeled U-factor shall be assigned a default U-factor from Table C303.1.3(1) or C303.1.3(2). The solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) and visible transmittance (VT) of glazed fenestration products (windows, glazed doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a labeled SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table C303.1.3(3).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FRAME TYPE</th>
<th>WINDOW AND GLASS DOOR U-FACTORS</th>
<th>SKYLIGHT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M etal</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M etal with Thermal Break</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonmetal or M etal Clad</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glazed Block</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE C303.1.3(1)
DEFAULT GLAZED WINDOW, GLASS DOOR AND SKYLIGHT U-FACTORS

2020 CITY OF BOULDER ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym “ICC” and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
C 303.1.4 Insulation product rating. The thermal resistance (R-value) of insulation shall be determined in accordance with the U.S. Federal Trade Commission R-value rule (CFR Title 16, Part 460) in units of h • ft² • °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

C 303.1.4.1 Insulated siding. The thermal resistance (R-value) of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

C 303.2 Installation. Materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions and the International Building Code.

C 303.2.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation. Insulation applied to the exterior of basement walls, crawl space walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation’s thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

C 303.2.2 Multiple layers of continuous insulation board. Where two or more layers of continuous insulation board are used in a construction assembly, the continuous insulation boards shall be installed in accordance with Section C303.2. Where the continuous insulation board manufacturer’s instructions do not address installation of two or more layers, the edge joints between each layer of continuous insulation boards shall be staggered.

### Table C303.1.3(2)
**DEFAULT OPAQUE DOOR U-FACTORS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Door Type</th>
<th>Opaque U-Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uninsulated Metal</td>
<td>1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulated Metal (Rolling)</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulated Metal (Other)</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulated, nonmetal edge, max 45% glazing, any glazing double pane</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table C303.1.3(3)
**DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Single Glazed</th>
<th>Double Glazed</th>
<th>Glazed Block</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SHGC</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VT</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 4 [CE]
COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

User note:

About this chapter: Chapter 4 presents the paths and options for compliance with the energy efficiency provisions. Chapter 4 contains energy efficiency provisions for the building envelope, fenestration, mechanical systems, appliances, freezers and coolers, kitchen exhaust, interior and exterior lighting, water-heating systems, transformers and motors.

SECTION C401
GENERAL

C 401.1 Scope. The provisions in this chapter are applicable to commercial buildings and their building sites.

C 401.2 Application. Commercial buildings shall comply with one of the following:

1. New buildings with a construction valuation less than $500,000 shall comply with Sections C402, C403, C404, C405 and C406.
2. The requirements of Section C407.

C 401.2.1 Core and shell buildings. Commercial core and shell buildings may take credit for energy efficiency that is part of the future interior tenant finish design, provided that the efficiency measures are shown on the final tenant build-out drawings. The code official shall issue a temporary certificate of occupancy until the final tenant drawings are submitted showing the efficiency measures. If all efficiency measures are shown on the final tenant drawings, a permanent certificate of occupancy shall be issued.

C 401.3 Existing buildings. Alterations, repairs, additions and change of use to existing buildings shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 5 of this code.

SECTION C402
BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS

C 402.1 General (Prescriptive). Building thermal envelope assemblies for buildings that are intended to comply with the code on a prescriptive basis in accordance with the compliance path described in Item 1 of Section C401.2, shall comply with the following:

1. The opaque portions of the building thermal envelope shall comply with the specific insulation requirements of Section C402.2 and the thermal requirements of either the R-value-based method of Section C402.1.3; the U-, C- and F-factor-based method of Section C402.1.4; or the component performance alternative of Section C402.1.5.
2. Roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance shall comply with Section C402.3.
3. Fenestration in building envelope assemblies shall comply with Section C402.4.
4. Air leakage of building envelope assemblies shall comply with Section C402.5.

Alternatively, where buildings have a vertical fenestration area or skylight area exceeding that allowed in Section C402.4, the building and building thermal envelope shall comply with Section C402.1, Item 2.

Where the total area of penetrations from mechanical equipment listed in Table C403.3.2(3) exceeds 1 percent of the opaque above-grade wall area, the mechanical equipment penetration area shall be calculated as a separate assembly with a default U-factor of 0.5 Btu/h • ft² • °F (3 W/m² • K) for the purposes of complying with Section C402.1 or C407.

Walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall comply with Section C403.10.1 or C403.10.2.

C 402.1.1 Low-energy buildings. The following low-energy buildings, or portions thereof separated from the remainder of the building by building thermal envelope assemblies complying with this section, shall be exempt from the building thermal envelope provisions of Section C402.

1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h • ft² (10.7 W/m²) or 1.0 watt per square foot (10.7 W/m²) of floor area for space conditioning purposes.
2. Those that do not contain conditioned space.

C 402.1.2 Equipment buildings. Buildings that comply with the following shall be exempt from the building thermal envelope provisions of this code:

1. Are separate buildings with floor area not more than 500 square feet (50 m²).
2. Are intended to house electronic equipment with installed equipment power totaling not less than 7 watts per square foot (75 W/m²) and not intended for human occupancy.
3. Have a heating system capacity not greater than 0.120 Btu/h • ft² (0.018 W/m²) or 0.0021 watt per square foot (0.018 W/m²) and not intended for human occupancy.
4. Have an average wall and roof U-factor less than 0.120.

C 402.1.3 Insulation component R-value-based method. Building thermal envelope opaque assemblies shall comply with the requirements of Sections C402.2 and C402.4. For opaque portions of the building thermal envelope intended to comply on an insulation component R-value basis, the R-values for insulation shall be not less than that specified in Table C402.1.3. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing Group R occupancies shall use the R-values from the “Group R” column of Table C402.1.3. Com-
commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing occupancies other than Group R shall use the R-factor from the "All other" column of Table C402.1.3.

C 402.1.4 Assembly U-factor, C-factor or F-factor-based method. Building thermal envelope opaque assemblies shall meet the requirements of Sections C402.2 and C402.4. Building thermal envelope opaque assemblies intended to comply on an assembly U-, C- or F-factor basis shall have a U-, C- or F-factor not greater than that specified in Table C402.1.4. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing Group R occupancies shall use the U-, C- or F-factor from the “Group R” column of Table C402.1.4. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing occupancies other than Group R shall use the U-, C- or F-factor from the “All other” column of Table C402.1.4.

C 402.1.4.1 Thermal resistance of cold-formed steel walls. U-factors of walls with cold-formed steel studs shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with Equation 4-1:

$$U = \frac{1}{R_s + (ER)}$$  \hspace{1cm} \text{(Equation 4-1)}

where:

- \(R_s\) = The cumulative R-value of the wall components along the path of heat transfer, excluding the cavity insulation and steel studs.
- \(ER\) = The effective R-value of the cavity insulation with steel studs as specified in Table C402.1.4.1.

C 402.1.5 Component performance alternative. Building envelope values and fenestration areas determined in accordance with Equation 4-2 shall be an alternative to compliance with the U-, F- and C-factors in Tables C402.1.4 and C402.4 and the maximum allowable fenestration areas in Section C402.4.1. Fenestration shall meet the applicable SHGC requirements of Section C402.4.3.

$$A + B + C + D + E \leq \text{Zero}$$  \hspace{1cm} \text{(Equation 4-2)}

where:

- \(A\) = Sum of the (UA Dif) values for each distinct assembly type of the building thermal envelope, other than slabs on grade and below-grade walls.
- \(UA\ Dif\) = UA Proposed - UA Table.
- \(UA\ Proposed\) = Proposed U-value \times Area.
- \(UA\ Table\) = (U-factor from Table C402.1.3, C402.1.4 or C402.4 \times Area.
- \(B\) = Sum of the (FL Dif) values for each distinct slab-on-grade perimeter condition of the building thermal envelope.
- \(FL\ Dif\) = FL Proposed - FL Table.
- \(FL\ Proposed\) = Proposed F-value \times Perimeter length.
- \(FL\ Table\) = (F-factor specified in Table C402.1.4) \times Perimeter length.
- \(C\) = Sum of the (CA Dif) values for each distinct below-grade wall assembly type of the building thermal envelope.
- \(CA\ Dif\) = CA Proposed - CA Table.
- \(CA\ Proposed\) = Proposed C-value \times Area.
- \(CA\ Table\) = (Maximum allowable C-factor specified in Table C402.1.4) \times Area.

Where the proposed vertical glazing area is less than or equal to the maximum vertical glazing area allowed by Section C402.4.1, the value of D (Excess Vertical Glazing Value) shall be zero. Otherwise:

- \(D\) = (DA \times UV) - (DA \times U Wall), but not less than zero.
- \(DA\) = (Proposed Vertical Glazing Area) - (Vertical Glazing Area allowed by Section C402.4.1).
- \(UA\ Wall\) = Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each opaque assembly of the exterior wall.
- \(U\ Wall\) = Area-weighted average U-value of all above-grade wall assemblies.
- \(UA\ V\) = Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each vertical glazing assembly.
- \(UV\) = UA V/total vertical glazing area.

Where the proposed skylight area is less than or equal to the skylight area allowed by Section C402.4.1, the value of E (Excess Skylight Value) shall be zero. Otherwise:

- \(E\) = (EA \times US) - (EA \times U Roof), but not less than zero.
- \(EA\) = (Proposed Skylight Area) - (Allowable Skylight Area as specified in Section C402.4.1).
- \(U\ Roof\) = Area-weighted average U-value of all roof assemblies.
- \(UAS\) = Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each skylight assembly.
- \(US\) = UAS/total skylight area.

C 402.2 Specific building thermal envelope insulation requirements (Prescriptive). Insulation in building thermal envelope opaque assemblies shall comply with Sections C402.2.1 through C402.2.8 and Table C402.1.3.

C 402.2.1 Roof assembly. The minimum thermal resistance (R-value) of the insulating material installed either between the roof framing or continuously on the roof assembly shall be as specified in Table C402.2.1, based on construction materials used in the roof assembly. Insulation installed on a suspended ceiling having removable ceiling tiles shall not be considered as part of the minimum thermal resistance of the roof insulation. Continuous insulation board shall be installed in not less than 2 layers and the edge joints between each layer of insulation shall be staggered.

Exceptions:

1. Continuously insulated roof assemblies where the thickness of insulation varies 1 inch (25 mm) or less and where the area-weighted U-factor is equivalent to the same assembly with the R-value specified in Table C402.1.3.
2. Where tapered insulation is used with insulation entirely above deck, the R-value where the insulation thickness varies 1 inch (25 mm) or less from the minimum thickness of tapered insula-
### TABLE C402.1.3
**Opaque Thermal Envelope Insulation Component Minimum Requirements, R-Value Method**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ALL OTHER</th>
<th>GROUP R</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Insulation entirely above roof deck</td>
<td>R-33ci</td>
<td>R-33ci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal buildings</td>
<td>R-19 + R-11 LS</td>
<td>R-19 + R-11 LS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attic and other</td>
<td>R-53</td>
<td>R-53</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Walls, above grade</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M ass</td>
<td>R-13.3ci</td>
<td>R-13.3ci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal building</td>
<td>R-13 + R-19.5ci</td>
<td>R-13 + R-13ci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal framed</td>
<td>R-13 + R-11ci</td>
<td>R-13 + R-11ci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood framed and other</td>
<td>R-13 + R-9ci</td>
<td>R-13 + R-9ci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or R-19 + R-5ci</td>
<td>or R-19 + R-5ci</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Walls, below grade</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Below-grade wall</td>
<td>R-7.5ci</td>
<td>R-10ci</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Floors</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M ass</td>
<td>R-15ci</td>
<td>R-16.7ci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joist/framing</td>
<td>R-30</td>
<td>R-30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slab-on-grade floors</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unheated slabs</td>
<td>R-15 for 24″ below</td>
<td>R-15 for 24″ below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heated slabs</td>
<td>R-20 for 48″ below + R-5 full slab</td>
<td>R-20 for 48″ below + R-5 full slab</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Opaque doors</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nonswinging</td>
<td>R-4.75</td>
<td>R-4.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m², 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m³.*
*ci = Continuous insulation, NR = No Requirement, LS = Liner System.*
*a. Assembly descriptions can be found in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Appendix A.*
*b. Where using R-value compliance method, a thermal spacer block shall be provided, otherwise use the U-factor compliance method in Table C402.1.4.*
*c. R-5.7ci is allowed to be substituted with concrete block walls complying with ASTM C90, ungrouted or partially grouted at 32 inches or less on center vertically and 48 inches or less on center horizontally, with ungrouted cores filled with materials having a maximum thermal conductivity of 0.44 Btu-in/h-f° F.*
*d. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the exterior insulation requirements for heated slabs.*
*e. “Mass floors” shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.3.*
*f. Steel floor joist systems shall be insulated to R-38.*
*g. “Mass walls” shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.2.*
*h. The first value is for perimeter insulation and the second value is for slab insulation. Perimeter insulation is not required to extend below the bottom of the slab.*
*i. Not applicable to garage doors. See Table C402.1.4.*

---

### TABLE C402.1.4
**Opaque Thermal Envelope Assembly Maximum Requirements, U-Factor Method**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ALL OTHER</th>
<th>GROUP R</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Insulation entirely above roof deck</td>
<td>U-0.030</td>
<td>U-0.030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal buildings</td>
<td>U-0.035</td>
<td>U-0.035</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attic and other</td>
<td>U-0.020</td>
<td>U-0.020</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Walls, above grade</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M ass</td>
<td>U-0.086</td>
<td>U-0.076</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal building</td>
<td>U-0.048</td>
<td>U-0.048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal framed</td>
<td>U-0.052</td>
<td>U-0.052</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood framed and other</td>
<td>U-0.048</td>
<td>U-0.048</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Walls, below grade</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Below-grade wall</td>
<td>C-0.119</td>
<td>C-0.092</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Floors</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Joist/framing</td>
<td>U-0.033</td>
<td>U-0.033</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slab-on-grade floors</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uheated slabs</td>
<td>F-0.52</td>
<td>F-0.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heated slabs</td>
<td>F-0.79 0.64</td>
<td>F-0.79 0.64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Opaque doors</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Swinging door</td>
<td>U-0.37</td>
<td>U-0.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garage door &lt;14% glazing</td>
<td>U-0.31</td>
<td>U-0.31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m², 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m³.*
*ci = Continuous insulation, NR = No Requirement, LS = Liner System.*
*a. Where assembly U-factors, C-factors, and F-factors are established in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Appendix A, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative where those values meet the criteria of this table, and provided that the construction, excluding the cladding system on walls, complies with the appropriate construction details from ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Appendix A.*
*b. Where U-factors have been established by testing in accordance with ASTM C1363, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative where those values meet the criteria of this table. The R-value of continuous insulation shall be permitted to be added to or subtracted from the original tested design.*
*c. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the U-factor requirements for above-grade mass walls.*
*d. “Mass floors” shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.3.*
*e. These C-, F- and U-factors are based on assemblies that are not required to contain insulation.*
*f. The first value is for perimeter insulation and the second value is for full slab insulation.*
*g. “Mass walls” shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.2.*
C 402.2.1 Skylight curbs. Skylight curbs shall be insulated to the level of roofs with insulation entirely above the deck or R-5, whichever is less.

Exception: Unit skylight curbs included as a component of a skylight listed and labeled in accordance with NFRC 100 shall not be required to be insulated.

C 402.2.2 Above-grade walls. The minimum thermal resistance (R-value) of materials installed in the wall cavity between framing members and continuously on the walls shall be as specified in Table C 402.1.3, based on framing type and construction materials used in the wall assembly. The R-value of integral insulation installed in concrete masonry units shall not be used in determining compliance with Table C 402.1.3. The perimeter insulation shall be placed on the outside of the foundation wall. The perimeter insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab for the minimum distance shown in the table or to the top of the footing, whichever is less, or downward to not less than the bottom of the slab and then horizontally to the interior or exterior for the total distance shown in the table. Insulation cavity insulation or structural slab insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking or structural slabs. "Mass floors" where used as a component of the thermal envelope of a building shall provide one of the following weights:

1. 35 pounds per square foot (171 kg/m²) of floor surface area.
2. 25 pounds per square foot (122 kg/m²) of floor surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pounds per cubic foot (1923 kg/m³).

Exceptions:

1. The floor framing cavity insulation or structural slab insulation shall be permitted to be in contact with the top side of sheathing or continuous insulation installed on the bottom side of floor assemblies where combined with insulation that meets or exceeds the minimum R-value in Table C 402.1.3 for "Metal framed" or "Wood framed and other" values for "Walls, Above Grade" and extends from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing or floor assembly members.

2. Insulation applied to the underside of concrete floor slabs shall be permitted an airspace of not more than 1 inch (25 mm) where it turns up and is in contact with the underside of the floor under walls associated with the building thermal envelope.

C 402.2.4 Slabs-on-grade perimeter insulation. Where the slab on grade is in contact with the ground, the minimum thermal resistance (R-value) of the insulation around the perimeter of unheated or heated slab-on-grade floors designed in accordance with the R-value method of Section C 402.1.3 shall be as specified in Table C 402.1.3. The perimeter insulation shall be placed on the outside of the foundation or on the inside of the foundation wall. The perimeter insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab for the minimum distance shown in the table or to the top of the footing, whichever is less, or downward to not less than the bottom of the slab and then horizontally to the interior or exterior for the total distance shown in the table. Insulation
extending away from the building shall be protected by pavement or by not less than 10 inches (254 mm) of soil.

**Exception:** Where the slab-on-grade floor is greater than 24 inches (61 mm) below the finished exterior grade, perimeter insulation is not required.

**C402.2.5 Below-grade walls.** The C-factor for the below-grade exterior walls shall be in accordance with Table C402.1.4. The R-value of the insulating material installed continuously within or on the below-grade exterior walls of the building envelope shall be in accordance with Table C402.1.3. The C-factor or R-value required shall extend to a depth of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) below the outside finished ground level, or to the level of the lowest floor of the conditioned space enclosed by the below-grade wall, whichever is less.

**C402.2.6 Insulation of radiant heating systems.** Radiant heating system panels, and their associated components that are installed in interior or exterior assemblies shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than R-3.5 on all surfaces not facing the space being heated. Radiant heating system panels that are installed in the building thermal envelope shall be separated from the exterior of the building or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than the R-value of insulation installed in the opaque assembly in which they are installed or the assembly shall comply with Section C402.1.4.

**Exception:** Heated slabs on grade insulated in accordance with Section C402.2.4.

**C402.2.7 Airspaces.** Where the thermal properties of airspaces are used to comply with this code in accordance with Section C401.2, such airspaces shall be enclosed in an unventilated cavity constructed to minimize airflow into and out of the enclosed airspace. Airflow shall be deemed minimized where the enclosed airspace is located on the interior side of the continuous air barrier and is bounded on all sides by building components.

**Exception:** The thermal resistance of airspaces located on the exterior side of the continuous air barrier and adjacent to and behind the exterior wall-covering material shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363 modified with an airflow entering the bottom and exiting the top of the airspace at an air movement rate of not less than 70 mm/second.

**C402.2.8 Concrete floor slabs.** Where concrete floor slabs penetrate the building thermal envelope, the rated U-factors of the components of the thermal envelope located between the floor slab and the finish ceiling shall be increased by 10 percent for the purposes of complying with Section C402.1.

**C402.3 Roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance.** Deleted.

**C402.3.1 Aged roof solar reflectance.** Deleted.

**C402.4 Fenestration (Prescriptive).** Fenestration shall comply with Sections C402.4.1 through C402.4.5 and Table C402.4. Daylight responsive controls shall comply with this section and Section C405.2.3.1.

**C402.4.1 Maximum area.** The vertical fenestration area, not including opaque doors and opaque spandrel panels, shall be not greater than 30 percent of the gross above-grade wall area. The skylight area shall be not greater than 3 percent of the gross roof area.

**TABLE C402.4**

| BUILDING ENVELOPE FENESTRATION MAXIMUM U-FACTOR AND SHGC REQUIREMENTS |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|------|
| VERTICAL FENESTRATION                           |      |      |
| U-factor for vertical curtain walls, storefronts and site-built fenestration products |      |      |
| Fixed fenestration                              | 0.36 |      |
| Operable fenestration                           | 0.45 |      |
| U-factor for entrance doors                     | 0.63 |      |
| U-factor for all other vertical fenestration    | 0.30 |      |

**SHGC**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Orientation</th>
<th>SEW</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PF &lt; 0.2</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>0.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2 ≤ PF &lt; 0.5</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PF ≥ 0.5</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Skylights**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>U-factor</th>
<th>SHGC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NR** = No Requirement, **PF** = Projection Factor.

a. "N" indicates vertical fenestration oriented within 45 degrees of true north. "SEW" indicates orientations other than "N." For buildings in the southern hemisphere, reverse south and north. Buildings located at less than 23.5 degrees latitude shall use SEW for all orientations.

**C402.4.1.1 Increased vertical fenestration area with daylight responsive controls.** Not more than 40 percent of the gross above-grade wall area shall be vertical fenestration, provided that all of the following requirements are met:

1. In buildings not greater than two stories above grade, not less than 50 percent of the net floor area is within a daylight zone.
2. In buildings three or more stories above grade, not less than 25 percent of the net floor area is within a daylight zone.
3. Daylight responsive controls complying with Section C405.2.3.1 are installed in daylight zones.
4. Visible transmittance (VT) of vertical fenestration is not less than 1.1 times solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC).

**Exception:** Fenestration that is outside the scope of NFRC 200 is not required to comply with Item 4.

**C402.4.1.2 Increased skylight area with daylight responsive controls.** The skylight area shall be not more than 6 percent of the roof area provided that daylight responsive controls complying with Section C405.2.3.1 are installed in toplit zones.

**C402.4.2 Minimum skylight fenestration area.** In an enclosed space greater than 2,500 square feet (232 m²) in floor area, directly under a roof with not less than 75 percent of the ceiling area with a ceiling height greater than 15 feet (4572 mm), and used as an office, lobby, atrium, concourse,
COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

corridor, storage space, gymnasium/exercise center, convention center, automotive service area, space where manufacturing occurs, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store, distribution/sorting area, transportation depot or workshop, the total toplit daylight zone shall be not less than half the floor area and shall provide one of the following:

1. A minimum skylight area to toplit daylight zone of not less than 3 percent where all skylights have a VT of not less than 0.40 as determined in accordance with Section C303.1.3.

2. A minimum skylight effective aperture of not less than 1 percent, determined in accordance with Equation 4-3.

Skylight Effective Aperture =
\[
0.85 \times \text{Skylight Area} \times \text{Skylight VT} \times \text{WF} \\
\text{Toplit Zone (Equation 4-3)}
\]

where:

- Skylight area = Total fenestration area of skylights.
- Skylight VT = Area weighted average visible transmittance of skylights.
- WF = Area weighted average well factor, where well factor is 0.9 if light well depth is less than 2 feet (610 mm), or 0.7 if light well depth is 2 feet (610 mm) or greater.
- Light well depth = Measurement vertically from the underside of the lowest point of the skylight glazing to the ceiling plane under the skylight.

Exception: Skylights above daylight zones of enclosed spaces are not required in:

1. Spaces where the designed general lighting power densities are less than 0.5 W/ft² (5.4 W/m²).
2. Areas where it is documented that existing structures or natural objects block direct beam sunlight on not less than half of the roof over the enclosed area for more than 1,500 daytime hours per year between 8 a.m. and 4 p.m.
3. Spaces where the daylight zone under rooftop monitors is greater than 50 percent of the enclosed space floor area.
4. Spaces where the total area minus the area of sidelight daylight zones is less than 2,500 square feet (232 m²), and where the lighting is controlled in accordance with Section C405.2.3.

C 402.4.2.1 Lighting controls in toplit daylight zones. Daylight responsive controls complying with Section C405.2.3.1 shall be provided to control all electric lights within toplit zones.

C 402.4.2.2 Haze factor. Skylights in office, storage, automotive service, manufacturing, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store and distribution/sorting area spaces shall have a glazing material or diffuser with a haze factor greater than 90 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D1003.

Exception: Skylights designed and installed to exclude direct sunlight entering the occupied space by the use of fixed or automated baffles or the geometry of skylight and light well.

C 402.4.3 Maximum U-factor and SHGC. The maximum U-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) for fenestration shall be as specified in Table C402.4.

The window projection factor shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-4.

PF = A/B

(Equation 4-4)

where:

- PF = Projection factor (decimal).
- A = Distance measured horizontally from the farthest continuous extremity of any overhang, eave or permanently attached shading device to the vertical surface of the glazing.
- B = Distance measured vertically from the bottom of the glazing to the underside of the overhang, eave or permanently attached shading device.

Where different windows or glass doors have different PF values, they shall each be evaluated separately.

C 402.4.3.1 Increased skylight SHGC. Skylights shall be permitted a maximum SHGC of 0.60 where located above daylight zones provided with daylight responsive controls.

C 402.4.3.2 Increased skylight U-factor. Where skylights are installed above daylight zones provided with daylight responsive controls, a maximum U-factor of 0.75 shall be permitted.

C 402.4.3.3 Dynamic glazing. Where dynamic glazing is intended to satisfy the SHGC and VT requirements of Table C402.4, the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC shall be greater than or equal to 2.4, and the dynamic glazing shall be automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. Dynamic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall not be permitted.

Exception: Dynamic glazing is not required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher labeled SHGC already comply with the requirements of Table C402.4.

C 402.4.3.4 Area-weighted U-factor. An area-weighted average shall be permitted to satisfy the U-factor requirements for each fenestration product category listed in Table C402.4. Individual fenestration products from different fenestration product categories listed in Table C402.4 shall not be combined in calculating area-weighted average U-factor.

C 402.4.4 Daylight zones. Daylight zones referenced in Sections C402.4.1.1 through C402.4.3.2 shall comply with Sections C405.2.3.2 and C405.2.3.3, as applicable. Daylight zones shall include toplit zones and sidelit zones.
**C402.5 Air leakage—thermal envelope (Mandatory).** The building thermal envelope shall comply with Sections C402.5.1 through C402.5.8.

**C402.5.1 Air barriers.** A continuous air barrier shall be provided throughout the building thermal envelope. The air barrier shall be located on the inside or outside of the building thermal envelope, located within the assemblies composing the building thermal envelope, or any combination thereof. The air barrier shall comply with Sections C402.5.1.1, C402.5.1.2 and C402.5.1.3.

**C402.5.1.1 Air barrier construction.** The continuous air barrier shall be constructed to comply with the following:

1. The air barrier shall be continuous for all assemblies that are the thermal envelope of the building and across the joints and assemblies.

2. Air barrier joints and seams shall be sealed, including sealing transitions in places and changes in materials. The joints and seals shall be securely installed in or on the joint for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to resist positive and negative pressure from wind, stack effect and mechanical ventilation.

3. Penetrations of the air barrier shall be caulked, gasketed or otherwise sealed in a manner compatible with the construction materials and location. Sealing shall allow for expansion, contraction and mechanical vibration. Joints and seams associated with penetrations shall be sealed in the same manner or taped. Sealing materials shall be securely installed around the penetration so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair the penetrations' ability to resist positive and negative pressure from wind, stack effect and mechanical ventilation. Sealing of concealed fire sprinklers, where required, shall be in a manner that is recommended by the manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.

4. Recessed lighting fixtures shall comply with Section C402.5.8. Where similar objects are installed that penetrate the air barrier, provisions shall be made to maintain the integrity of the air barrier.

**C402.5.1.2 Building thermal envelope testing.** The building thermal envelope shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E779 or an equivalent method approved by the code official. The measured air leakage shall not exceed 0.40 cfm/ft² (2.0 L/s • m²) of the building thermal envelope area at a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa). Alternatively, portions of the building shall be tested and the measured air leakages shall be area weighted by the surface areas of the building thermal envelope in each portion. The weighted-average test results shall not exceed the whole building leakage limit. In the alternative approach, the following portions of the building shall be tested:

1. The entire envelope area of all stories that have any spaces directly under a roof.
2. The entire envelope area of all stories that have a building entrance, exposed floor or loading dock, or are below grade.
3. Representative above-grade sections of the building totaling at least 25 percent of the wall area enclosing the remaining conditioned space.
4. For R-2 occupancies, dwelling units when tested in accordance with Section C402.5.1.3.

Testing and inspection shall be conducted by a third-party registered design professional. A written report of the test results shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the code official. Testing shall be performed at any time after completion of all penetrations of the building thermal envelope.

**C402.5.1.3 Dwelling unit air infiltration.** A sampling of dwelling units shall be tested and the air leakage rate of each tested dwelling unit’s enclosure surface area shall not exceed 0.25 cfm/ft² of surface area. For purposes of this section, enclosure surface area of a unit means the total surface area of all walls, floors and ceilings. Testing shall be conducted with a blower door at a pressure of 0.2 inch water gauge (50 Pa).

The sampling of dwelling units tested shall include at least 20 percent of the dwelling units in each building, including at least one of each unit type (a unit type is distinct if it has a different floor plan or a different exterior exposure) and approximately an equal number of units on each floor level. Each of these units must be tested and pass without a failure. If a failure occurs, items causing the failure must be diagnosed and corrected, and the unit retested until it passes. A minimum of at least two additional units of this type in the same building must also be tested and pass.

During testing:

1. Exterior windows and doors, fireplace doors and stove doors shall be closed but not sealed beyond the intended weather stripping or other infiltration control measures.
2. Dampers, including exhaust, intake, makeup air, backdraft and flue dampers, shall be closed but not sealed beyond intended infiltration control measures.
3. Interior doors, if installed at the time of the test, shall be open.
4. Exterior doors for continuous ventilation systems and heat recovery ventilators shall be closed and sealed.
5. Heating and cooling systems, if installed at the time of the test, shall be turned off.
6. Supply and return registers, if installed at the time of the test, shall be fully open.
C 402.5.2 Air leakage of fenestration. The air leakage of fenestration assemblies shall meet the provisions of Table C 402.5.2. Testing shall be in accordance with the applicable reference test standard in Table C 402.5.2 by an accredited, independent testing laboratory and labeled by the manufacturer.

Exceptions:

1. Field-fabricated fenestration assemblies that are sealed in accordance with Section C 402.5.1.
2. Fenestration in buildings that comply with the testing alternative of Section C 402.5 are not required to meet the air leakage requirements in Table C 402.5.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE C 402.5.2 MAXIMUM AIR LEAKAGE RATE FOR FENESTRATION ASSEMBLIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FENESTRATION ASSEMBLY</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sliding doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swinging doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skylights – with condensation weepage openings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skylights – all other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtain walls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storefront glazing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial glazed swinging entrance doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power-operated sliding doors and power-operated folding doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revolving doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garage doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rolling doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-speed doors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.47 L/s, 1 square foot = 0.093 m².

² The maximum rate for windows, sliding and swinging doors, and skylights is permitted to be 0.3 cfm per square foot of fenestration or door area when tested in accordance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/1.S.2/A 440 or NFRC 400.

³ The walls, floors and ceilings that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be insulated to be not less than equivalent to the insulation requirement of below-grade walls as specified in Table C 402.1.3 or C 402.1.4.

2. The walls, floors and ceilings that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be sealed in accordance with Section C 402.5.1.1.

2.3. The doors into the enclosed room or space shall be shall be fully gasketed.

2.4. Water lines and ducts in the enclosed room or space shall be insulated in accordance with Section C 403.

2.5. Where an air duct supplying combustion air to the enclosed room or space passes through conditioned space, the duct shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than R-8.

Exception: Fireplaces and stoves complying with Sections 901 through 905 of the International Mechanical Code, and Section 2111.14 of the International Building Code.

C 402.5.4 Doors and access openings to shafts, chutes, stairways and elevator lobbies. Doors and access openings from conditioned space to shafts, chutes stairways and elevator lobbies not within the scope of the fenestration assemblies covered by Section C 402.5.2 shall be gasketed, weatherstriped or sealed.

Exceptions:

1. Door openings required to comply with Section 716 of the International Building Code.
2. Doors and door openings required to comply with UL 1784 by the International Building Code.

C 402.5.5 Air intakes, exhaust openings, stairways and shafts. Stairway enclosures, elevator shaft vents and other outdoor air intakes and exhaust openings integral to the building envelope shall be provided with dampers in accordance with Section C 403.7.7.

C 402.5.6 Loading dock weatherseals. Cargo door openings and loading door openings shall be equipped with weatherseals that restrict infiltration and provide direct contact along the top and sides of vehicles that are parked in the doorway.

C 402.5.7 Vestibules. Building entrances shall be protected with an enclosed vestibule, with all doors opening into and out of the vestibule equipped with self-closing devices. Vestibules shall be designed so that in passing through the vestibule it is not necessary for the interior and exterior doors to open at the same time. The installation of one or more revolving doors in the building entrance shall not eliminate the requirement that a vestibule be provided on any doors adjacent to revolving doors.

Exceptions: Vestibules are not required for the following:

1. Doors not intended to be used by the public, such as doors to mechanical or electrical equipment rooms, or intended solely for employee use.
2. Doors opening directly from a sleeping unit or dwelling unit.
3. Doors that open directly from a space less than 3,000 square feet (298 m²) in area.
4. Revolving doors.
5. Doors used primarily to facilitate vehicular movement or material handling and adjacent personnel doors.
6. Doors that have an air curtain with a velocity of not less than 6.56 feet per second (2 m/s) at the floor that have been tested in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 220 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Manual or automatic controls shall be provided that will operate the air curtain with the opening and closing of the door. Air curtains and their controls shall comply with Section C408.2.3.

C402.5.8 Recessed lighting. Recessed luminaires installed in the building thermal envelope shall be all of the following:
1. IC-rated.
2. Labeled as having an air leakage rate of not more 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a 1.57 psf (75 Pa) pressure differential.
3. Sealed with a gasket or caulk between the housing and interior wall or ceiling covering.

SECTION C403 BUILDING MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

C403.1 General. Mechanical systems and equipment serving the building heating, cooling, ventilating or refrigerating needs shall comply with this section.

C403.1.1 Calculation of heating and cooling loads. Design loads associated with heating, ventilating and air conditioning of the building shall be determined in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183 or by an approved equivalent computational procedure using the design parameters specified in Chapter 3. Heating and cooling loads shall be adjusted to account for load reductions that are achieved where energy recovery systems are utilized in the HVAC system in accordance with the ASHRAE HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook by an approved equivalent computational procedure.

C403.2 System design (Mandatory). Mechanical systems shall be designed to comply with Sections C403.2.1 and C403.2.2. Where elements of a building’s mechanical systems are addressed in Sections C403.3 through C403.12, such elements shall comply with the applicable provisions of those sections.

C403.2.1 Zone isolation required (Mandatory). HVAC systems serving zones that are over 25,000 square feet (2323 m²) in floor area or that span more than one floor and are designed to operate or be occupied nonsimultaneously shall be divided into isolation areas. Each isolation area shall be equipped with isolation devices and controls configured to automatically shut off the supply of conditioned air and outdoor air to and exhaust air from the isolation area. Each isolation area shall be controlled independently by a device meeting the requirements of Section C403.4.2.2. Central systems and plants shall be provided with controls and devices that will allow system and equipment operation for any length of time while serving only the smallest isolation area served by the system or plant.

Exceptions:
1. Exhaust air and outdoor air connections to isolation areas where the fan system to which they connect is not greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s).
2. Exhaust airflow from a single isolation area of less than 10 percent of the design airflow of the exhaust system to which it connects.
3. Isolation areas intended to operate continuously or intended to be inoperative only when all other isolation areas in a zone are inoperative.

C403.2.2 Ventilation (Mandatory). Ventilation, either natural or mechanical, shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 4 of the International Mechanical Code. Where mechanical ventilation is provided, the system shall provide the capability to reduce the outdoor air supply to the minimum required by Chapter 4 of the International Mechanical Code.

C403.3 Heating and cooling equipment efficiencies (Mandatory). Heating and cooling equipment installed in mechanical systems shall be sized in accordance with Section C403.3.1 and shall be not less efficient in the use of energy than as specified in Section C403.3.2.

C403.3.1 Equipment sizing (Mandatory). The output capacity of heating and cooling equipment shall be not greater than that of the smallest available equipment size that exceeds the loads calculated in accordance with Section C403.3.1. A single piece of equipment providing both heating and cooling shall satisfy this provision for one function with the capacity for the other function as small as possible, within available equipment options.

Exceptions:
1. Required standby equipment and systems provided with controls and devices that allow such systems or equipment to operate automatically only when the primary equipment is not operating.
2. Multiple units of the same equipment type with combined capacities exceeding the design load and provided with controls that are configured to sequence the operation of each unit based on load.

C403.3.2 HVAC equipment performance requirements (Mandatory). Equipment shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(9) when tested and rated in accordance with the applicable test procedure. Plate-type liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers shall meet the minimum requirements of Table C403.3.2(10). The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the manufacturer. Where multiple rating conditions or performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall satisfy all stated requirements. Where components, such as indoor or outdoor coils, from different manufacturers are used, calculations and supporting data shall be furnished by the designer that demonstrates that the combined efficiency of the specified components meets the requirements herein.
### TABLE C403.2(1)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY</th>
<th>HEATING SECTION TYPE</th>
<th>SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION</th>
<th>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDUREa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioners, air cooled</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/hb</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Split System</td>
<td>13.0 SEER</td>
<td>AHRI 210/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Single Package</td>
<td></td>
<td>14.0 SEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Through-the-wall (air cooled)</td>
<td>≤ 30,000 Btu/hb</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Split system</td>
<td>12.0 SEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Single Package</td>
<td>12.0 SEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small-duct high-velocity (air cooled)</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/hb</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Split System</td>
<td>11.0 SEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioners, air cooled</td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>11.2 EER</td>
<td>AHRI 340/360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.0 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h and &lt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>11.0 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.4 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 240,000 Btu/h and &lt; 760,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>11.0 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.4 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 760,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>9.7 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td></td>
<td>11.0 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioners, water cooled</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/hb</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>12.1 EER</td>
<td>AHRI 210/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12.3 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>12.1 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.9 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h and &lt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>12.5 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.9 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 240,000 Btu/h and &lt; 760,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>12.4 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.6 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 760,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>12.2 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.5 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EQUIPMENT TYPE</td>
<td>SIZE CATEGORY</td>
<td>HEATING SECTION TYPE</td>
<td>SUB-CATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION</td>
<td>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY</td>
<td>TEST PROCEDURE*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioners, evaporatively cooled</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>12.1 EER 12.3 IEER</td>
<td>AHRI 210/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>12.1 EER 12.3 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>11.9 EER 12.1 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h and &lt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>12.0 EER 12.2 IEER</td>
<td>AHRI 340/360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>11.8 EER 12.0 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 240,000 Btu/h and &lt; 760,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>11.9 EER 12.1 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>11.7 EER 11.9 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 760,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>11.7 EER 11.9 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condensing units, air cooled</td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10.5 EER 11.8 IEER</td>
<td>AHRI 365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condensing units, water cooled</td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>13.5 EER 14.0 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condensing units, evaporatively cooled</td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>13.5 EER 14.0 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. Single-phase, air-cooled air conditioners less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated by NAECA. SEER values are those set by NAECA.
### TABLE C403.3.2(2)  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:**  
**ELECTRICALLY OPERATED EFFICIENCY UNITARY AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY</th>
<th>HEATING SECTION TYPE</th>
<th>SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION</th>
<th>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Air cooled (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Split System</td>
<td>14.0 SEER</td>
<td>AHRI 210/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Single Package</td>
<td>14.0 SEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Through-the-wall, air cooled</strong></td>
<td>≤ 30,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Split System</td>
<td>12.0 SEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Single Package</td>
<td>12.0 SEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Single-duct high-velocity air cooled</strong></td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Split System</td>
<td>11.0 SEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Air cooled (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>11.0 EER and 12.0 IEER</td>
<td>AHRI 340/360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td>10.8 EER and 11.8 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Air cooled (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h and &lt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>10.6 EER and 11.6 IEER</td>
<td>AHRI 340/360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td>10.4 EER and 11.4 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Air cooled (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>≥ 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Electric Resistance (or None)</td>
<td>Split System and Single Package</td>
<td>9.5 EER and 10.6 IEER</td>
<td>AHRI 340/360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td>9.3 EER and 9.4 IEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water to Air: Water Loop (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>&lt; 17,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>86°F entering water</td>
<td>12.2 EER</td>
<td>ISO 13256-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water to Air: Ground Water (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>≥ 17,000 Btu/h and &lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>86°F entering water</td>
<td>13.0 EER</td>
<td>ISO 13256-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water to Air: Ground Water (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>86°F entering water</td>
<td>13.0 EER</td>
<td>ISO 13256-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brine to Air: Ground Loop (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>&lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>59°F entering water</td>
<td>18.0 EER</td>
<td>ISO 13256-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water to Water: Water Loop (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>&lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>86°F entering water</td>
<td>10.6 EER</td>
<td>ISO 13256-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water to Water: Ground Water (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>&lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>59°F entering water</td>
<td>16.3 EER</td>
<td>ISO 13256-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brine to Water: Ground Loop (cooling mode)</strong></td>
<td>&lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>77°F entering fluid</td>
<td>12.1 EER</td>
<td>ISO 13256-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY</th>
<th>HEATING SECTION TYPE</th>
<th>SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION</th>
<th>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air cooled (heating mode)</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Split System</td>
<td>8.2 HSPF</td>
<td>AHR 210/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≤ 30,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Single Package</td>
<td>7.4 HSPF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Through-the-wall, (air cooled, heating mode)</td>
<td>≤ 30,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Split System</td>
<td>7.4 HSPF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Split System</td>
<td>8.0 HSPF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≤ 30,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Single Package</td>
<td>7.4 HSPF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small-duct high velocity (air cooled, heating mode)</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Single Package</td>
<td>6.8 HSPF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air cooled (heating mode)</td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air</td>
<td>3.3 COP</td>
<td>AHR 340/360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air</td>
<td>2.25 COP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water to Air: Water Loop (heating mode)</td>
<td>&lt; 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>68°F entering water</td>
<td>4.3 COP</td>
<td>ISO 13256-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water to Air: Ground Water (heating mode)</td>
<td>&lt; 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>50°F entering water</td>
<td>3.7 COP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brine to Air: Ground Loop (heating mode)</td>
<td>&lt; 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>32°F entering fluid</td>
<td>3.2 COP</td>
<td>ISO 13256-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water to Water: Water Loop (heating mode)</td>
<td>&lt; 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>68°F entering water</td>
<td>3.7 COP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water to Water: Ground Water (heating mode)</td>
<td>&lt; 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>50°F entering water</td>
<td>3.1 COP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brine to Water: Ground Loop (heating mode)</td>
<td>&lt; 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>32°F entering fluid</td>
<td>2.5 COP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [°F - 32]/1.8.
a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. Single-phase, air-cooled heat pumps less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated by NAECA. SEER and HSPF values are those set by NAECA.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)</th>
<th>SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION</th>
<th>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PTAC (cooling mode)</td>
<td>All Capacities</td>
<td>95°F db outdoor air</td>
<td>14.0 - (0.300 × Cap/1000) EER</td>
<td>AHRI 310/380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTAC (cooling mode)</td>
<td>All Capacities</td>
<td>95°F db outdoor air</td>
<td>10.9 - (0.213 × Cap/1000) EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTHP (cooling mode)</td>
<td>All Capacities</td>
<td>95°F db outdoor air</td>
<td>14.0 - (0.300 × Cap/1000) EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTHP (cooling mode)</td>
<td>All Capacities</td>
<td>95°F db outdoor air</td>
<td>10.8 - (0.213 × Cap/1000) EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTHP (heating mode)</td>
<td>All Capacities</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>3.2 - (0.026 × Cap/1000) COP</td>
<td>AHRI 390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTHP (heating mode)</td>
<td>All Capacities</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2.9 - (0.026 × Cap/1000) COP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPVAC (cooling mode)</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air</td>
<td>9.0 EER</td>
<td>AHRI 390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPVAC (cooling mode)</td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air</td>
<td>8.9 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPVAC (cooling mode)</td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h and &lt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air</td>
<td>8.6 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPVHP (cooling mode)</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>47°F db/ 43°F wb outdoor air</td>
<td>3.0 COP</td>
<td>AHRI 390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPVHP (cooling mode)</td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 135,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>47°F db/ 43°F wb outdoor air</td>
<td>3.0 COP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPVHP (cooling mode)</td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h and &lt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>47°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air</td>
<td>2.9 COP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioners, with louvered sides</td>
<td>&lt; 6,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>11.0 CEER</td>
<td>ANSI/AHAM RAC-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioners, with louvered sides</td>
<td>≥ 6,000 Btu/h and &lt; 8,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>11.0 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioners, with louvered sides</td>
<td>≥ 8,000 Btu/h and &lt; 14,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10.9 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioners, with louvered sides</td>
<td>≥ 14,000 Btu/h and &lt; 20,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10.7 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioners, with louvered sides</td>
<td>≥ 20,000 Btu/h and &lt; 25,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9.4 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioners, with louvered sides</td>
<td>&gt; 25,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9.0 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioners, without louvered sides</td>
<td>&lt; 6,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10.0 CEER</td>
<td>ANSI/AHAM RAC-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioners, without louvered sides</td>
<td>≥ 6,000 Btu/h and &lt; 8,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10.0 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioners, without louvered sides</td>
<td>≥ 8,000 Btu/h and &lt; 11,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9.6 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioners, without louvered sides</td>
<td>≥ 11,000 Btu/h and &lt; 14,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9.5 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioner heat pumps with louvered sides</td>
<td>&lt; 20,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9.8 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air-conditioner heat pumps without louvered sides</td>
<td>≥ 20,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9.3 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air-conditioner heat pumps without louvered sides</td>
<td>≥ 14,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>8.7 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE C403.3.2(3)—continued MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS, PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS, SINGLE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)</th>
<th>SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION</th>
<th>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioner casement only</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9.5 CEER</td>
<td>ANSI/ AHAM RAC-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room air conditioner casement-slider</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10.4 CEER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8, wb = wet bulb, db = dry bulb.

*Cap* = The rated cooling capacity of the project in Btu/h. Where the unit’s capacity is less than 7000 Btu/h, use 7000 Btu/h in the calculation. Where the unit’s capacity is greater than 15,000 Btu/h, use 15,000 Btu/h in the calculations.

- a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.
- b. Replacement unit shall be factory labeled as follows: “MANUFACTURED FOR REPLACEMENT APPLICATIONS ONLY: NOT TO BE INSTALLED IN NEW CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS.” Replacement efficiencies apply only to units with existing sleeves less than 16 inches (406 mm) in height and less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in width.

### TABLE C403.3.2(4) WARM-AIR FURNACES AND COMBINATION WARM-AIR FURNACES/AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS, WARM-AIR DUCT FURNACES AND UNIT HEATERS, MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)</th>
<th>SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION</th>
<th>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Warm-air furnaces, gas fired</td>
<td>&lt; 225,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>80% AFUE or 80% Ec</td>
<td>DOE 10 CFR Part 430 or ANSI Z21.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 225,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Maximum capacity</td>
<td>80% Ec</td>
<td>ANSI Z21.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warm-air furnaces, oil fired</td>
<td>&lt; 225,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>83% AFUE or 80% Ec</td>
<td>DOE 10 CFR Part 430 or UL 727</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 225,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>Maximum capacity</td>
<td>81% Ec</td>
<td>UL 727</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warm-air duct furnaces, gas fired</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>Maximum capacity</td>
<td>80% Ec</td>
<td>ANSI Z83.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warm-air unit heaters, gas fired</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>Maximum capacity</td>
<td>80% Ec</td>
<td>ANSI Z83.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warm-air unit heaters, oil fired</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>Maximum capacity</td>
<td>80% Ec</td>
<td>UL 731</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

- a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.
- b. Minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit’s controls.
- c. Combination units not covered by the National Appliance Energy Conservation Act of 1987 (NAECA) (3-phase power or cooling capacity greater than or equal to 65,000 Btu/h [19 kW]) shall comply with either rating.
- d. Ec = Thermal efficiency. See test procedure for detailed discussion.
- e. Ec = Combustion efficiency (100% less flue losses). See test procedure for detailed discussion.
- f. Ec = Combustion efficiency. Units shall also include an IID, have jackets not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.
- g. Ec = Thermal efficiency. Units shall also include an IID, have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.
### TABLE C403.3.2(5)

**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: GAS- AND OIL-FIRED BOILERS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE*</th>
<th>SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)</th>
<th>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY*</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boilers, hot water</td>
<td>Gas-fired</td>
<td>$&lt; 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$82% \text{ AFUE}$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$\geq 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $\leq 2,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$80% E_t$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt; 2,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$82% E_c$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oil-fired$^c$</td>
<td>$&lt; 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$84% \text{ AFUE}$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$\geq 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $\leq 2,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$82% E_t$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt; 2,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$84% E_c$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boilers, steam</td>
<td>Gas-fired</td>
<td>$&lt; 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$80% \text{ AFUE}$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gas-fired-all, except natural draft</td>
<td>$\geq 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $\leq 2,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$79% E_t$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt; 2,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$79% E_t$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gas-fired-natural draft</td>
<td>$\geq 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $\leq 2,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$77% E_t$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt; 2,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$77% E_t$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oil-fired$^c$</td>
<td>$&lt; 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$82% \text{ AFUE}$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$\geq 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $\leq 2,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$81% E_t$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt; 2,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>$81% E_t$</td>
<td>10 CFR Part 431</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. These requirements apply to boilers with rated input of 8,000,000 Btu/h or less that are not packaged boilers and to all packaged boilers. Minimum efficiency requirements for boilers cover all capacities of packaged boilers.

b. Maximum capacity – minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit’s controls.

c. Includes oil-fired (residual).

d. $E_c$ = Combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses).

e. $E_t$ = Thermal efficiency. See referenced standard for detailed information.

f. Boilers shall not be equipped with a constant-burning ignition pilot.

g. A boiler not equipped with a tankless domestic water heating coil shall be equipped with an automatic means for adjusting the temperature of the water such that an incremental change in inferred heat load produces a corresponding incremental change in the temperature of the water supplied.

### TABLE C403.3.2(6)

**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: CONDENSING UNITS, ELECTRICALLY OPERATED**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY</th>
<th>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY*</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Condensing units, air cooled</td>
<td>$\geq 135,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>10.1 EER</td>
<td>AHRI 365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11.2 IPLV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condensing units, water or evaporatively cooled</td>
<td>$\geq 135,000 \text{ Btu/h}$</td>
<td>13.1 EER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13.1 IPLV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.

b. IPLVs are only applicable to equipment with capacity modulation.
### TABLE C403.3.2(7)
**WATER CHILLING PACKAGES - EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY</th>
<th>UNITS</th>
<th>BEFORE 1/1/2015</th>
<th>AS OF 1/1/2015</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air-cooled chillers</td>
<td>&lt; 150 Tons</td>
<td>EER (Btu/W)</td>
<td>≥ 9.562 FL</td>
<td>≥ 10.100 FL</td>
<td>≥ 9.700 FL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 150 Tons</td>
<td>EER (Btu/W)</td>
<td>≥ 12.500 IPLV</td>
<td>≥ 13.700 IPLV</td>
<td>≥ 15.800 IPLV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 9.562 FL</td>
<td>≥ 10.100 FL</td>
<td>≥ 9.700 FL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 12.500 IPLV</td>
<td>≥ 14.000 IPLV</td>
<td>≥ 16.100 IPLV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air-cooled without condenser, electrically operated</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>EER (Btu/W)</td>
<td>Air-cooled chillers without condenser shall be rated with matching condensers and complying with air-cooled chiller efficiency requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water cooled, electrically operated positive displacement</td>
<td>&lt; 75 Tons</td>
<td>kW/ton</td>
<td>≤ 0.780 FL</td>
<td>≤ 0.800 FL</td>
<td>≤ 0.750 FL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 75 tons and &lt; 150 tons</td>
<td>kW/ton</td>
<td>≤ 0.630 IPLV ≤ 0.600 IPLV</td>
<td>≤ 0.600 FL ≤ 0.500 FL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 150 tons and &lt; 300 tons</td>
<td>kW/ton</td>
<td>≤ 0.775 FL ≤ 0.790 FL</td>
<td>≤ 0.720 FL ≤ 0.750 FL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 300 tons and &lt; 600 tons</td>
<td>kW/ton</td>
<td>≤ 0.680 FL ≤ 0.718 FL</td>
<td>≤ 0.660 FL ≤ 0.680 FL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 600 tons</td>
<td>kW/ton</td>
<td>≤ 0.620 FL ≤ 0.639 FL</td>
<td>≤ 0.610 FL ≤ 0.625 FL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water cooled, electrically operated centrifugal</td>
<td>&lt; 150 Tons</td>
<td>kW/ton</td>
<td>≤ 0.634 FL ≤ 0.639 FL</td>
<td>≤ 0.610 FL ≤ 0.625 FL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 150 tons and &lt; 300 tons</td>
<td>kW/ton</td>
<td>≤ 0.596 IPLV ≤ 0.585 IPLV</td>
<td>≤ 0.550 FL ≤ 0.490 FL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 300 tons and &lt; 400 tons</td>
<td>kW/ton</td>
<td>≤ 0.576 FL ≤ 0.560 FL</td>
<td>≤ 0.560 FL ≤ 0.595 FL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 400 tons and &lt; 600 tons</td>
<td>kW/ton</td>
<td>≤ 0.549 IPLV ≤ 0.490 IPLV</td>
<td>≤ 0.500 IPLV ≤ 0.380 IPLV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 600 Tons</td>
<td>kW/ton</td>
<td>≤ 0.539 IPLV ≤ 0.400 IPLV</td>
<td>≤ 0.500 IPLV ≤ 0.380 IPLV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air cooled, absorption, single effect</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>COP</td>
<td>≥ 0.600 FL</td>
<td>≥ 0.600 FL</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water cooled absorption, single effect</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>COP</td>
<td>≥ 0.700 FL</td>
<td>≥ 0.700 FL</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absorption, double effect, indirect fired</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>COP</td>
<td>≥ 1.000 FL</td>
<td>≥ 1.000 FL</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absorption, double effect, direct fired</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>COP</td>
<td>≥ 1.000 FL</td>
<td>≥ 1.000 FL</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Notes:**
- a. The requirements for centrifugal chiller shall be adjusted for nonstandard rating conditions in accordance with Section C403.3.2.1 and are only applicable for the range of conditions listed in Section C403.3.2.1. The requirements for air-cooled, water-cooled positive displacement and absorption chillers are at standard rating conditions defined in the reference test procedure.
- b. Both the full-load and IPLV requirements shall be met or exceeded to comply with this standard. Where there is a Path B, compliance can be with either Path A or Path B for any application.
- c. NA means the requirements are not applicable for Path B and only Path A can be used for compliance.
- d. FL represents the full-load performance requirements and IPLV the part-load performance requirements.
# Commercial Energy Efficiency

## Table C403.3.2(8)
**Minimum Efficiency Requirements: Heat Rejection Equipment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equipment Type*</th>
<th>Subcategory or Rating Condition*</th>
<th>Performance Required**</th>
<th>Test Procedure**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Propeller or axial fan open-circuit cooling towers</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>95°F entering water, 85°F leaving water, 75°F entering wb</td>
<td>≥ 40.2 gpm/hp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>95°F entering water, 85°F leaving water, 75°F entering wb</td>
<td>≥ 20.0 gpm/hp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propeller or axial fan closed-circuit cooling towers</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>102°F entering water, 90°F leaving water, 75°F entering wb</td>
<td>≥ 16.1 gpm/hp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centrifugal fan closed-circuit cooling towers</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>102°F entering water, 90°F leaving water, 75°F entering wb</td>
<td>≥ 7.0 gpm/hp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Ammonia Test Fluid, 140°F entering gas temperature, 96.3°F condensing temperature, 75°F entering wb</td>
<td>≥ 134,000 Btu/h × hp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Ammonia Test Fluid, 140°F entering gas temperature, 96.3°F condensing temperature, 75°F entering wb</td>
<td>≥ 110,000 Btu/h × hp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>R-507A Test Fluid, 165°F entering gas temperature, 105°F condensing temperature, 75°F entering wb</td>
<td>≥ 157,000 Btu/h × hp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>R-507A Test Fluid, 165°F entering gas temperature, 105°F condensing temperature, 75°F entering wb</td>
<td>≥ 135,000 Btu/h × hp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air-cooled condensers</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>125°F Condensing Temperature, 190°F Entering Gas Temperature, 15°F subcooling, 95°F entering db</td>
<td>≥ 176,000 Btu/h × hp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8, L/s × kW = (gpm/hp)/(11.83), COP = (Btu/h × hp)/(2550.7),
db = dry bulb temperature, °F, wb = wet bulb temperature, °F.
a. The efficiencies and test procedures for both open- and closed-circuit cooling towers are not applicable to hybrid cooling towers that contain a combination of wet and dry heat exchange sections.
b. For purposes of this table, open circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition, divided by the fan nameplate-rated motor power.
c. For purposes of this table, closed-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition, divided by the sum of the fan nameplate-rated motor power and the spray pump nameplate-rated motor power.
d. For purposes of this table, air-cooled condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected from the refrigerant divided by the fan nameplate-rated motor power.
e. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure. The certification requirements do not apply to field-erected cooling towers.
f. Where a certification program exists for a covered product and it includes provisions for verification and challenge of equipment efficiency ratings, then the product shall be listed in the certification program, or, where a certification program exists for a covered product, and it includes provisions for verification and challenge of equipment efficiency ratings, but the product is not listed in the existing certification program, the ratings shall be verified by an independent laboratory test report.
g. Cooling towers shall comply with the minimum efficiency listed in the table for that specific type of tower with the capacity effect of any project-specific accessories or options included in the capacity of the cooling tower.
h. For purposes of this table, evaporative condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected at the specified rating condition in the table divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate power and the integral spray pump nameplate power.
i. Requirements for evaporative condensers are listed with ammonia (R-717) and R-507A as test fluids in the table. Evaporative condensers intended for use with halocarbon refrigerants other than R-507A shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements listed in this table with R-507A as the test fluid.
COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

**C403.3.2.1 Water-cooled centrifugal chilling packages (Mandatory).** Equipment not designed for operation at A HRI Standard 550/590 test conditions of 44°F (7°C) leaving chilled-water temperature and 2.4 gpm/ton evaporator fluid flow and 85°F (29°C) entering condenser water temperature with 3 gpm/ton (0.054 l/s kW) condenser water flow shall have maximum full-load kW/ton (FL) and part-load ratings requirements adjusted using Equations 4-5 and 4-6.

\[
FL_{adj} = FL/K_{adj}
\]  
(Equation 4-5)

\[
PLV_{adj} = IPLV/K_{adj}
\]  
(Equation 4-6)

where:

\[
K_{adj} = A \times B
\]

FL = Full-load kW/ton value as specified in Table C403.3.2(7).

\[
FL_{adj} = \text{Maximum full-load kW/ton rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.}
\]

\[
IPLV = \text{Value as specified in Table C403.3.2(7).}
\]

\[
PLV_{adj} = \text{Maximum NPLV rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.}
\]

\[
A = 0.00000014592 \times (LIFT)^4 - 0.0000346496 \times (LIFT)^3 + 0.00314196 \times (LIFT)^2 - 0.147199 \times (LIFT) + 3.9302
\]

\[
B = 0.0015 \times L_{vg}E_{vap} + 0.934
\]

\[
L_{vg} = \text{Full-load evaporator leaving fluid temperature (°F).}
\]

\[
L_{vg}E_{vap} = \text{Full-load evaporator leaving temperature (°F).}
\]

The FL_{adj} and PLV_{adj} values are only applicable for centrifugal chillers meeting all of the following full-load design ranges:

1. Minimum evaporator leaving temperature: 36°F.

---

**TABLE C403.3.2(9)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY*</th>
<th>MINIMUM SCOP-127(^a) EFFICIENCY DOWNFLOW UNITS / UPFLOW UNITS</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioners, air cooled</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>2.20 / 2.09</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>2.10 / 1.99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>1.90 / 1.79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioners, water cooled</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>2.60 / 2.49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>2.50 / 2.39</td>
<td>ANSI/AHRAE 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>2.40 / 2.29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioners, water cooled with fluid economizer</td>
<td>&lt; 65,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>2.60 / 2.49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>2.45 / 2.34</td>
<td>ANSI/AHRAE 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>2.35 / 2.24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Air conditioners, glycol cooled (rated at 40% propylene glycol) | < 65,000 Btu/h | 2.50 / 2.39 | | |"
2. Maximum condenser leaving temperature: 115°F.
3. 20°F ≤ LIFT ≤ 80°F.

C 403.3.2.2 Positive displacement (air- and water-cooled) chilling packages (Mandatory). Equipment with a leaving fluid temperature higher than 32°F (0°C) and water-cooled positive displacement chilling packages with a condenser leaving fluid temperature below 115°F (46°C) shall meet the requirements of Table C 403.3.2(7) when tested or certified with water at standard rating conditions, in accordance with the referenced test procedure.

C 403.3.3 Hot gas bypass limitation. Cooling systems shall not use hot gas bypass or other evaporator pressure control systems unless the system is designed with multiple steps of unloading or continuous capacity modulation. The capacity of the hot gas bypass shall be limited as indicated in Table C 403.3.3, as limited by Section C 403.5.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RATED CAPACITY</th>
<th>MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY (% of total capacity)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≤ 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

C 403.3.4 Boiler turndown. Boiler systems with design input of greater than 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) shall comply with the turndown ratio specified in Table C 403.3.4.

The system turndown requirement shall be met through the use of multiple single-input boilers, one or more modulating boilers or a combination of single-input and modulating boilers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BOILER SYSTEM DESIGN INPUT (Btu/h)</th>
<th>MINIMUM TURNDOWN RATIO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≥ 1,000,000 and less than or equal to 5,000,000</td>
<td>3 to 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 5,000,000 and less than or equal to 10,000,000</td>
<td>4 to 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 10,000,000</td>
<td>5 to 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

C 403.4 Heating and cooling system controls (Mandatory). Each heating and cooling system shall be provided with controls in accordance with Sections C 403.4.1 through C 403.4.5.

C 403.4.1 Thermostatic controls (Mandatory). The supply of heating and cooling energy to each zone shall be controlled by individual thermostatic controls capable of responding to temperature within the zone. Where humidification or dehumidification or both is provided, not fewer than one humidity control device shall be provided for each humidity control system.

Exception: Independent perimeter systems that are designed to offset only building envelope heat losses, gains or both serving one or more perimeter zones also served by an interior system provided that both of the following conditions are met:
1. The perimeter system includes not fewer than one thermostatic control zone for each building exposure having exterior walls facing only one orientation (within ± 45 degrees) (0.8 rad) for more than 50 contiguous feet (15 240 mm).
2. The perimeter system heating and cooling supply is controlled by thermostats located within the zones served by the system.

C 403.4.1.1 Heat pump supplementary heat (Mandatory). Heat pumps having supplementary electric resistance heat shall have controls that, except during defrost, prevent supplementary heat operation where the heat pump can provide the heating load.

C 403.4.1.2 Deadband (Mandatory). Where used to control both heating and cooling, zone thermostatic controls shall be configured to provide a temperature range or deadband of not less than 5°F (2.8°C) within which the supply of heating and cooling energy to the zone is shut off or reduced to a minimum.

Exceptions:
1. Thermostats requiring manual changeover between heating and cooling modes.
2. Occupancies or applications requiring precision in indoor temperature control as approved by the code official.

C 403.4.1.3 Setpoint overlap restriction (Mandatory). Where a zone has a separate heating and a separate cooling thermostatic control located within the zone, a limit switch, mechanical stop or direct digital control system with software programming shall be configured to prevent the heating setpoint from exceeding the cooling setpoint and to maintain a deadband in accordance with Section C 403.4.1.2.

C 403.4.1.4 Heated or cooled vestibules (Mandatory). The heating system for heated vestibules and air curtains with integral heating shall be provided with controls configured to shut off the source of heating when the outdoor air temperature is greater than 45°F (7°C). Vestibule heating and cooling systems shall be controlled by a thermostat located in the vestibule configured to limit heating to a temperature not greater than 60°F (16°C) and cooling to a temperature not less than 85°F (29°C).

Exception: Control of heating or cooling provided by site-recovered energy or transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

C 403.4.1.5 Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback control (Mandatory). Hot water boilers that supply heat to the building through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that lowers the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.
C 403.4.1.6 Mechanical system shutoff (Mandatory).

C 403.4.1.6.1 Operable wall or roof openings. Any directly conditioned space with operable wall or roof openings to the outdoors shall be equipped with interlock controls that disable or reset the temperature setpoint for mechanical heating and cooling. The reset setpoint for mechanical heating shall be 55°F and for mechanical cooling, 90°F. The system shutoff or setpoint temperature reset shall activate within 5 minutes of any such operable wall or roof opening being opened.

Exception: Interlock controls are not required for systems and spaces as follows:
1. On doors with automatic closing devices.
2. For vestibules or revolving doors.
3. For any space without a thermostatic control (a thermostat or space temperature sensor used to control heating or cooling to the space).

C 403.4.1.6.2 Overhead door HVAC shutoff devices. Overhead doors, cargo doors, sliding doors, folding and accordion-style wall systems, and other loading dock-style doors that open to the outdoors shall be equipped with interlock controls that disable the heating, cooling and humidity control equipment that serves the area or zone adjacent to the door. The shutoff shall activate prior to the door being 25 percent open. A shutoff override, designed to be used when vehicles are parked in the doorway, may be included on doors equipped with weatherseals. The override must automatically deactivate when the vehicle is removed.

Exceptions:
1. Areas where HVAC equipment must remain on for safety, sanitation or other health-related reasons.
2. Areas heated by radiant heating systems.
3. The shutoff override shall activate within 5 minutes in groups U, SI, and B motor vehicle showroom occupancies.

C 403.4.2 Off-hour controls (Mandatory). Each zone shall be provided with thermostatic setback controls that are controlled by either an automatic time clock or programmable control system.

Exceptions:
1. Zones that will be operated continuously.
2. Zones with a full HVAC load demand not exceeding 6,800 Btu/h (2 kW) and having a manual shutoff switch located with ready access.

C 403.4.2.1 Thermostatic setback (Mandatory). Thermostatic setback controls shall be configured to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain zone temperatures down to 55°F (13°C) or up to 85°F (29°C).

C 403.4.2.2 Automatic setback and shutdown (Mandatory). Automatic time clock or programmable controls shall be capable of starting and stopping the system for seven different daily schedules per week and retaining their programming and time setting during a loss of power for not fewer than 10 hours. Additionally, the controls shall have a manual override that allows temporary operation of the system for up to 2 hours; a manually operated timer configured to operate the system for up to 2 hours; or an occupancy sensor.

C 403.4.2.3 Automatic start (Mandatory). A automatic start controls shall be provided for each HVAC system. The controls shall be configured to automatically adjust the daily start time of the HVAC system in order to bring each space to the desired occupied temperature immediately prior to scheduled occupancy.

C 403.4.3 Hydronic systems controls. The heating of fluids that have been previously mechanically cooled and the cooling of fluids that have been previously mechanically heated shall be limited in accordance with Sections C 403.4.3.1 through C 403.4.3.3. Hydronic heating systems comprised of multiple-packaged boilers and designed to deliver conditioned water or steam into a common distribution system shall include automatic controls configured to sequence operation of the boilers. Hydronic heating systems composed of a single boiler and greater than 500,000 Btu/h (146.5 kW) input design capacity shall include either a multistaged or modulating burner.

C 403.4.3.1 Three-pipe system. Hydronic systems that use a common return system for both hot water and chilled water are prohibited.

C 403.4.3.2 Two-pipe changeover system. Systems that use a common distribution system to supply both heated and chilled water shall be designed to allow a deadband between changeover from one mode to the other of not less than 15°F (8.3°C) outside air temperatures; be designed to and provided with controls that will allow operation in one mode for not less than 4 hours before changing over to the other mode; and be provided with controls that allow heating and cooling supply temperatures at the changeover point to be not more than 30°F (16.7°C) apart.

C 403.4.3.3 Hydronic (water loop) heat pump systems. Hydronic heat pump systems shall comply with Sections C 403.4.3.3.1 through C 403.4.3.3.3.

C 403.4.3.3.1 Temperature deadband. Hydronic heat pumps connected to a common heat pump water loop with central devices for heat rejection and heat addition shall have controls that are configured to provide a heat pump water supply temperature deadband of not less than 20°F (11°C) between initiation of heat rejection and heat addition by the central devices.

Exception: Where a system loop temperature optimization controller is installed and can determine the most efficient operating temperature based on real-time conditions of demand and capacity, deadbands of less than 20°F (11°C) shall be permitted.
C 403.4.3.3.2 **Heat rejection.** The following shall apply to hydronic water loop heat pump systems:

1. Where a closed-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, either an automatic valve shall be installed to bypass the flow of water around the closed-circuit cooling tower, except for any flow necessary for freeze protection, or low-leakage positive-closure dampers shall be provided.

2. Where an open-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, an automatic valve shall be installed to bypass all heat pump water flow around the open-circuit cooling tower.

3. Where an open-circuit cooling tower is used in conjunction with a separate heat exchanger to isolate the open-circuit cooling tower from the heat pump loop, heat loss shall be controlled by shutting down the circulation pump on the cooling tower loop.

**Exception:** Where it can be demonstrated that a heat pump system will be required to reject heat throughout the year.

C 403.4.3.3.3 **Two-position valve.** Each hydronic heat pump on the hydronic heating system having a total pump system power exceeding 10 hp (7.5 kW) shall have a two-position valve.

C 403.4.4 **Part-load controls.** Hydronic systems greater than or equal to 300,000 Btu/h (87.9 kW) in design output capacity supplying heated or chilled water to comfort conditioning systems shall include controls that are configured to do all of the following:

1. Automatically reset the supply-water temperatures in response to varying building heating and cooling demand using coil valve position, zone-return water temperature, building-return water temperature or outside air temperature. The temperature shall be reset by no less than 25 percent of the design supply-to-return water temperature difference.

2. Automatically vary fluid flow for hydronic systems with a combined pump motor capacity of 2 hp (1.5 kW) or larger with three or more control valves or other devices by reducing the system design flow rate by not less than 50 percent or the maximum reduction allowed by the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment.

3. Automatically vary pump flow on heating-water systems, chilled-water systems and heat rejection loops serving water-cooled unitary air conditioners as follows:
   1. Where pumps operate continuously or operate based on a time schedule, pumps with nominal output motor power of 2 hp or more shall have a variable speed drive.

   3.2. Where pumps have automatic direct digital control configured to operate pumps only when zone heating or cooling is required, a variable speed drive shall be provided for pumps with motors having the same or greater nominal output power indicated in Table C 403.4.4 based on the system served.

4. Where a variable speed drive is required by Item 3 of this Section, pump motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design water flow. Pump flow shall be controlled to maintain one control valve nearly wide open to satisfy the minimum differential pressure.

**Exceptions:**

1. Supply-water temperature reset is not required for chilled-water systems supplied by off-site district chilled water or chilled water from ice storage systems.

2. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated coil circulation pumps where needed for freeze protection.

3. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated equipment circulation pumps where configured in primary/secondary design to provide the minimum flow requirements of the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment.

4. Variable speed drives are not required on heating water pumps where more than 50 percent of annual heat is generated by an electric boiler.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHILLED WATER AND HEAT REJECTION LOOP PUMPS IN THESE CLIMATE ZONES</th>
<th>HEATING WATER PUMPS IN THESE CLIMATE ZONES</th>
<th>VSD REQUIRED FOR MOTORS WITH RATED OUTPUT OF:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5B</td>
<td>5B</td>
<td>≥ 7.5 hp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5 hp</td>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 10 hp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C 403.4.5 **Pump isolation.** Chilled water plants including more than one chiller shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the chiller plant when a chiller is shut down. Chillers piped in series for the purpose of increased temperature differential shall be considered as one chiller.

Boiler systems including more than one boiler shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the boiler system when a boiler is shut down.

C 403.5 **Economizers (Prescriptive).** Economizers shall comply with Sections C 403.5.1 through C 403.5.5.

An air or water economizer shall be provided for the following cooling systems:

1. Chilled water systems with a total cooling capacity, less cooling capacity provided with air economizers specified in Table C 403.5.
2. Individual fan systems with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 54,000 Btu/h (15.8 kW) in buildings having other than a Group R occupancy.

   The total supply capacity of all fan cooling units not provided with economizers shall not exceed 20 percent of the total supply capacity of all fan cooling units in the building or 300,000 Btu/h (88 kW), whichever is greater.

3. Individual fan systems with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 270,000 Btu/h (79.1 kW) in buildings having a Group R occupancy.

   The total supply capacity of all fan cooling units not provided with economizers shall not exceed 20 percent of the total supply capacity of all fan cooling units in the building or 1,500,000 Btu/h (440 kW), whichever is greater.

   **Exceptions:** Economizers are not required for the following systems.

   > 1. Where more than 25 percent of the air designed to be supplied by the system is to spaces that are designed to be humidified above 35°F (1.7°C) dew-point temperature to satisfy process needs.

   > 2. Systems serving supermarket areas with open refrigerated casework.

   > 3. Systems that include a heat recovery system in accordance with Section C403.9.5.

   **C403.5.1 Integrated economizer control.** Economizer systems shall be integrated with the mechanical cooling system and be configured to provide partial cooling even where additional mechanical cooling is required to provide the remainder of the cooling load. Controls shall not be capable of creating a false load in the mechanical cooling systems by limiting or disabling the economizer or any other means, such as hot gas bypass, except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling.

   Units that include an air economizer shall comply with the following:

   1. Unit controls shall have the mechanical cooling capacity control interlocked with the air economizer controls such that the outdoor air damper is at the 100-percent open position when mechanical cooling is on and the outdoor air damper does not begin to close to prevent coil freezing due to minimum compressor run time until the leaving air temperature is less than 45°F (7°C).

2. Direct expansion (DX) units that control 75,000 Btu/h (22 kW) or greater of rated capacity of the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of mechanical cooling capacity.

3. Other DX units, including those that control space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space, shall be in accordance with Table C403.5.1.

**C403.5.2 Economizer heating system impact.** HVAC system design and economizer controls shall be such that economizer operation does not increase building heating energy use during normal operation.

   **Exception:** Economizers on variable air volume (VAV) systems that cause zone level heating to increase because of a reduction in supply air temperature.

**C403.5.3 Air economizers.** Where economizers are required by Section C403.5, air economizers shall comply with Sections C403.5.3.1 through C403.5.3.5.

**C403.5.3.1 Design capacity.** Air economizer systems shall be configured to modulate outdoor air and return air dampers to provide up to 100 percent of the design supply air quantity as outdoor air for cooling.

**C403.5.3.2 Control signal.** Economizer controls and dampers shall be configured to sequence the dampers with the mechanical cooling equipment and shall not be controlled by only mixed-air temperature.

   **Exception:** The use of mixed-air temperature limit control shall be permitted for systems controlled from space temperature (such as single-zone systems).

**C403.5.3.3 High-limit shutoff.** Air economizers shall be configured to automatically reduce outdoor air intake to the design minimum outdoor air quantity when outdoor air intake will not reduce cooling energy usage. High-limit shutoff control types for specific cli-

---

### TABLE C403.5

**MINIMUM CHILLED-WATER SYSTEM COOLING CAPACITY FOR DETERMINING ECONOMIZER COOLING REQUIREMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLIMATE ZONES (COOLING)</th>
<th>TOTAL CHILLED-WATER SYSTEM CAPACITY LESS CAPACITY OF COOLING UNITS WITH AIR ECONOMIZERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Water-cooled Chilled-water Systems</td>
<td>Air-cooled Chilled-water Systems or District Chilled-Water Systems</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

### TABLE C403.5.1

**DX COOLING STAGE REQUIREMENTS FOR MODULATING AIRFLOW UNITS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RATING CAPACITY</th>
<th>MINIMUM NUMBER OF MECHANICAL COOLING STAGES</th>
<th>MINIMUM COMPRESSOR DISPLACEMENT*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h and &lt; 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>3 stages</td>
<td>≤ 35% of full load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 240,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>4 stages</td>
<td>≤ 25% full load</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. For mechanical cooling stage control that does not use variable compressor displacement, the percent displacement shall be equivalent to the mechanical cooling capacity reduction evaluated at the full load rating conditions for the compressor.

---

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym “ICC” and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
moters shall be chosen from Table C403.5.3.3. High-
limit shutoff control settings for these control types
shall be those specified in Table C403.5.3.3.
C 403.5.3.4 Relief of excess outdoor air. Systems shall
be capable of relieving excess outdoor air during air
economizer operation to prevent overpressurizing the
building. The relief air outlet shall be located to avoid
recirculation into the building.
C 403.5.3.5 Economizer dampers. Return, exhaust/relief
and outdoor air dampers used in economizers
shall comply with Section C403.7.7.
C 403.5.4 Water-side economizers. Where economizers
are required by Section C403.5, water-side economizers
shall comply with Sections C403.5.4.1 and C403.5.4.2.
C 403.5.4.1 Design capacity. Water economizer sys-
tems shall be configured to cool supply air by indirect
evaporation and providing up to 100 percent of the
expected system cooling load at outdoor air tempera-
tures of not greater than 50°F (10°C) dry bulb/45°F
(7°C) wet bulb.
Exceptions:
1. Systems primarily serving computer rooms in
which 100 percent of the expected system
cooling load at 40°F (4°C) dry bulb/35°F
(1.7°C) wet bulb is met with evaporative water
economizers.
2. Systems primarily serving computer rooms
with dry cooler water economizers that satisfy
100 percent of the expected system cooling
load at 35°F (1.7°C) dry bulb.
3. Systems where dehumidification requirements
cannot be met using outdoor air temperatures of
50°F (10°C) dry bulb/45°F (7°C) wet bulb and
where 100 percent of the expected system cooling
load at 45°F (7°C) dry bulb/40°F (4°C) wet bulb
is met with evaporative water economizers.
C 403.5.4.2 Maximum pressure drop. Precooling
coils and water-to-water heat exchangers used as part
of a water economizer system shall either have a water-
side pressure drop of less than 15 feet (45 kPa) of water
or a secondary loop shall be created so that the coil or
heat exchanger pressure drop is not seen by the circu-
lating pumps when the system is in the normal cooling
(noneconomizer) mode.
C 403.5.5 Economizer fault detection and diagnostics
(Mandatory). Air-cooled unitary direct-expansion units
listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(3) and vari-
able refrigerant flow (VRF) units that are equipped with an
economizer in accordance with Sections C403.5 through
C403.5.4 shall include a fault detection and diagnostics
system complying with the following:
1. The following temperature sensors shall be perma-
nently installed to monitor system operation:
   1.1. Outside air.
   1.2. Supply air.
   1.3. Return air.
2. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of ±2°F
   (1.1°C) over the range of 40°F to 80°F (4°C to
   26.7°C).
3. Refrigerant pressure sensors, where used, shall have
   an accuracy of ±3 percent of full scale.
4. The unit controller shall be configured to provide
   system status by indicating the following:
   4.1. Free cooling available.
   4.2. Economizer enabled.
   4.3. Compressor enabled.
   4.4. Heating enabled.
   4.5. Mixed air low limit cycle active.
   4.6. The current value of each sensor.
5. The unit controller shall be capable of manually ini-
tiating each operating mode so that the operation of
compressors, economizers, fans and the heating sys-
tem can be independently tested and verified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEVICE TYPE</th>
<th>CLIMATE ZONE</th>
<th>REQUIRED HIGH LIMIT (ECONOMIZER OFF WHEN):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Equation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed dry bulb</td>
<td>5B</td>
<td>$T_{OA} &gt; 75°F$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Differential dry bulb</td>
<td>5B</td>
<td>$T_{OA} &gt; T_{RA}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed enthalpy with fixed</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>$h_{OA} &gt; 28 \text{ Btu/lb}^a$ or $T_{OA} &gt; 75°F$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry-bulb temperatures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Differential enthalpy with fixed</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>$h_{OA} &gt; h_{RA}$ or $T_{OA} &gt; 75°F$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry-bulb temperature</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 305 mm, °C = (°F - 32) / 1.8, 1 Btu/lb = 2.33 kJ/kg.
a. At altitudes substantially different than sea level, the fixed enthalpy limit shall be set to the enthalpy value at 75°F and 50-percent relative humidity. As an example, at approximately 6,000 feet elevation, the fixed enthalpy limit is approximately 30.7 Btu/lb.
b. Devices with selectable setpoints shall be capable of being set to within 2°F and 2 Btu/lb of the setpoint listed.
C 403.6 Requirements for mechanical systems serving multiple zones. Sections C 403.6.1 through C 403.6.9 shall apply to mechanical systems serving multiple zones.

C 403.6.1 Variable air volume and multiple-zone systems. Supply air systems serving multiple zones shall be variable air volume (VAV) systems that have zone controls configured to reduce the volume of air that is reheated, recooled or mixed in each zone to one of the following:

1. Twenty percent of the zone design peak supply for systems with DDC and 30 percent for other systems.
2. Systems with DDC where all of the following apply:
   2.1. The airflow rate in the deadband between heating and cooling does not exceed 20 percent of the zone design peak supply rate or higher allowed rates under Items 3, 4 and 5 of this section.
   2.2. The first stage of heating modulates the zone supply air temperature setpoint up to a maximum setpoint while the airflow is maintained at the deadband flow rate.
   2.3. The second stage of heating modulates the airflow rate from the deadband flow rate up to the heating maximum flow rate that is less than 50 percent of the zone design peak supply rate.
3. The outdoor airflow rate required to meet the minimum ventilation requirements of Chapter 4 of the International Mechanical Code.
4. A higher rate that can be demonstrated to reduce overall system annual energy use by offsetting reheat/ recool energy losses through a reduction in outdoor air intake for the system as approved by the code official.
5. The airflow rate required to comply with applicable codes or accreditation standards such as pressure relationships or minimum air change rates.

Exception: The following individual zones or entire air distribution systems are exempted from the requirement for VAV control:

1. Zones or supply air systems where not less than 75 percent of the energy for reheating or for providing warm air in mixing systems is provided from a site-recovered, including condenser heat, or site-solar energy source.
2. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling, mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously cooled, either mechanically or through the use of economizer systems, and air that has been previously mechanically heated.

C 403.6.2 Single-duct VAV systems, terminal devices. Single-duct VAV systems shall use terminal devices capable of and configured to reduce the supply of primary supply air before reheating or recooling takes place.

C 403.6.3 Dual-duct and mixing VAV systems, terminal devices. Systems that have one warm air duct and one cool air duct shall use terminal devices that are configured to reduce the flow from one duct to a minimum before mixing of air from the other duct takes place.

C 403.6.4 Single-fan dual-duct and mixing VAV systems, economizers. Individual dual-duct or mixing heating and cooling systems with a single fan and with total capacities greater than 90,000 Btu/h [(26.4 kW) 7.5 tons] shall not be equipped with air economizers.

C 403.6.5 Supply-air temperature reset controls. Multiple-zone HVAC systems shall include controls that automatically reset the supply-air temperature in response to representative building loads, or to outdoor air temperature. The controls shall be configured to reset the supply air temperature not less than 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room air temperature.

Exceptions:

1. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling or mixing of heated and cooled supply air.
2. Seventy-five percent of the energy for reheating is from site-recovered or site-solar energy sources.
3. Zones with peak supply air quantities of 300 cfm (142 L/s) or less.

C 403.6.6 Multiple-zone VAV system ventilation optimization control. Multiple-zone VAV systems with direct digital control of individual zone boxes reporting to a central control panel shall have automatic controls configured to reduce outdoor air intake flow below design rates in response to changes in system ventilation efficiency ($E_v$) as defined by the International Mechanical Code.

Exceptions:

1. VAV systems with zonal transfer fans that recirculate air from other zones without directly mixing it with outdoor air, dual-duct dual-fan VAV systems, and VAV systems with fan-powered terminal units.
2. Systems where total design exhaust airflow is more than 70 percent of total design outdoor air intake flow requirements.

C 403.6.7 Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminal control. Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminals shall have automatic controls configured to:

1. Turn off the terminal fan except when space heating is required or where required for ventilation.
COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

2. Turn on the terminal fan as the first stage of heating before the heating coil is activated.
3. During heating for warmup or setback temperature control, either:
   3.1. Operate the terminal fan and heating coil without primary air.
   3.2. Reverse the terminal damper logic and provide heating from the central air handler by primary air.

**C 403.7.1 Demand control ventilation (Mandatory).** Demand control ventilation (DCV) shall be provided for spaces larger than 500 square feet (46.5 m²) and with an average occupant load of 25 people or greater per 1,000 square feet (93 m²) of floor area. Demand control ventilation shall be reset based on the zone requiring the most pressure. In such case, the setpoint is reset lower until one zone damper is nearly wide open. The demand control settings shall be capable of monitoring zone damper positions or shall have an alternative method of indicating the need for static pressure that is configured to provide all of the following:

1. Automatic detection of any zone that excessively drives the reset logic.
2. Generation of an alarm to the system operational location.
3. Allowance for an operator to readily remove one or more zones from the reset algorithm.

**C 403.6.9 Static pressure sensor location.** Static pressure sensors used to control VAV fans shall be located such that the controller setpoint is not greater than 1.2 inches w.c. (299 Pa). Where this results in one or more sensors being located downstream of major duct splits, not less than one sensor shall be located on each major branch to ensure that static pressure can be maintained in each branch.

**C 403.7 Ventilation and exhaust systems (Mandatory).** In addition to other requirements of Section C403 applicable to the provision of ventilation air or the exhaust of air, ventilation and exhaust systems shall be in accordance with Sections C403.7.1 through C403.7.7.

**C 403.7.1 Demand control ventilation (Mandatory).** Demand control ventilation (DCV) shall be provided for spaces larger than 500 square feet (46.5 m²) and with an average occupant load of 25 people or greater per 1,000 square feet (93 m²) of floor area, as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the International Mechanical Code, and served by systems with one or more of the following:

1. An air-side economizer.
2. Automatic modulating control of the outdoor air damper.
3. A design outdoor airflow greater than 3,000 cfm (1416 L/s).

**Exceptions:**

1. Systems with energy recovery complying with Section C403.7.4.
2. Multiple-zone systems without direct digital control of individual zones communicating with a central control panel.
3. Systems with a design outdoor airflow less than 1,200 cfm (566 L/s).

4. Spaces where the supply airflow rate minus any makeup or outgoing transfer air requirement is less than 1,200 cfm (566 L/s).

5. Ventilation provided only for process loads.

**C 403.7.2 Enclosed parking garage ventilation controls (Mandatory).** Enclosed parking garages used for storing or handling automobiles operating under their own power shall employ contamination-sensing devices and automatic controls configured to stage fans or modulate fan average airflow rates to 50 percent or less of design capacity, or intermittently operate fans less than 20 percent of the occupied time or as required to maintain acceptable contaminant levels in accordance with International Mechanical Code provisions. Failure of contamination-sensing devices shall cause the exhaust fans to operate continuously at design airflow.

**Exceptions:**

1. Garages with a total exhaust capacity less than 22,500 cfm (10 620 L/s) with ventilation systems that do not utilize heating or mechanical cooling.
2. Garages that have a garage area to ventilation system motor nameplate power ratio that exceeds 1125 cfm/hp (710 L/s/kW) and do not utilize heating or mechanical cooling.

**C 403.7.3 Ventilation air heating control (Mandatory).** Units that provide ventilation air to multiple zones and operate in conjunction with zone heating and cooling systems shall not use heating or heat recovery to warm supply air to a temperature greater than 60°F (16°C) when representative building loads or outdoor air temperatures indicate that the majority of zones require cooling.

**C 403.7.4 Energy recovery ventilation systems (Mandatory).** Where the supply airflow rate of a fan system exceeds the values specified in Table C403.7.4, the system shall include an energy recovery system. The energy recovery system shall be configured to provide a change in the enthalpy of the outdoor air supply of not less than 50 percent of the difference between the outdoor air and return air enthalpies, at design conditions. Where an air economizer is required, the energy recovery system shall include a bypass or controls that permit operation of the economizer as required by Section C403.5.

**Exception:** An energy recovery ventilation system shall not be required in any of the following conditions:

1. Where energy recovery systems are prohibited by the International Mechanical Code.
2. Laboratory fume hood systems that include not fewer than one of the following features:
   2.1. Variable-air-volume hood exhaust and room supply systems configured to reduce exhaust and makeup air volume to 50 percent or less of design values.
   2.2. Direct makeup (auxiliary) air supply equal to or greater than 75 percent of the exhaust rate, heated not warmer than 2°F (1.1°C) above room setpoint, cooled to not cooler than 3°F (1.7°C) below room.
setpoint, with no humidification added, and no simultaneous heating and cooling used for dehumidification control.

3. Systems serving spaces that are heated to less than 60°F (15.5°C) and that are not cooled.

4. Where more than 60 percent of the outdoor heating energy is provided from site-recovered or site-solar energy.

5. Cooling energy recovery in Climate Zones 3C, 4C, 5B, 5C, 6B, 7 and 8.

6. Systems requiring dehumidification that employ energy recovery in series with the cooling coil.

7. Where the largest source of air exhausted at a single location at the building exterior is less than 75 percent of the design outdoor air flow rate.

8. Systems expected to operate less than 20 hours per week at the outdoor air percentage.

9. Systems exhausting toxic, flammable, paint or corrosive fumes or dust.

10. Commercial kitchen hoods used for collecting and removing grease vapors and smoke.

C403.7.5 Kitchen exhaust systems (Mandatory).

Replacement air introduced directly into the exhaust hood cavity shall not be greater than 10 percent of the hood exhaust airflow rate. Conditioned supply air delivered to any space shall not exceed the greater of the following:

1. The ventilation rate required to meet the space heating or cooling load.

2. The hood exhaust flow minus the available transfer air from adjacent space where available transfer air is considered to be that portion of outdoor ventilation air not required to satisfy other exhaust needs, such as restrooms, and not required to maintain pressurization of adjacent spaces.

Where total kitchen hood exhaust airflow rate is greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s), each hood shall be a factory-built commercial exhaust hood listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory in compliance with UL 710. Each hood shall have a maximum exhaust rate as specified in Table C403.7.5 and shall comply with one of the following:

1. Not less than 50 percent of all replacement air shall be transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

2. Demand ventilation systems on not less than 75 percent of the exhaust air that are configured to provide not less than a 50-percent reduction in exhaust and replacement air system airflow rates, including controls necessary to modulate airflow in response to appliance operation and to maintain full capture and containment of smoke, effluent and combustion products during cooking and idle.

3. Listed energy recovery devices with a sensible heat recovery effectiveness of not less than 40 percent on not less than 50 percent of the total exhaust airflow.

Where a single hood, or hood section, is installed over appliances with different duty ratings, the maximum allowable flow rate for the hood or hood section shall be based on the requirements for the highest appliance duty rating under the hood or hood section.

Exception: Where not less than 75 percent of all the replacement air is transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLIMATE ZONE</th>
<th>PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 10% and &lt; 20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5B</td>
<td>≥ 2,500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF HOOD</th>
<th>LIGHT-DUTY EQUIPMENT</th>
<th>MEDIUM-DUTY EQUIPMENT</th>
<th>HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT</th>
<th>EXTRA-HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wall-mounted canopy</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single island</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double island (per side)</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyebrow</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backshelf/Pass-over</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s; 1 foot = 305 mm.
NA = Not Allowed.
C 403.7.6 Automatic control of HVAC systems serving guestrooms (Mandatory). In Group R-1 buildings containing more than 50 guestrooms, each guestroom shall be provided with controls complying with the provisions of Sections C 403.7.6.1 and C 403.7.6.2. Card key controls comply with these requirements.

C 403.7.6.1 Temperature setpoint controls. Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured to automatically raise the cooling setpoint and lower the heating setpoint by not less than 4°F (2°C) from the occupant setpoint within 30 minutes after the occupants have left the guestroom. The controls shall be capable of and configured to automatically raise the cooling setpoint to not lower than 80°F (27°C) and lower the heating setpoint to not higher than 60°F (16°C) when the guestroom is unrented or has not been continuously occupied for more than 16 hours or a networked guestroom control system indicates that the guestroom is unrented and the guestroom is unoccupied for more than 30 minutes. A networked guestroom control system that is capable of returning the thermostat setpoints to default occupied setpoints 60 minutes prior to the time a guestroom is scheduled to be occupied is not precluded by this section. Cooling that is capable of limiting relative humidity with a setpoint not lower than 65-percent relative humidity during unoccupied periods is not precluded by this section.

C 403.7.6.2 Ventilation controls. Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured to automatically turn off the ventilation and exhaust fans within 30 minutes of the occupants leaving the guestroom, or isolation devices shall be provided to each guestroom that are capable of automatically shutting off the supply of outdoor air to and exhaust air from the guestroom.

Exception: Guestroom ventilation systems are not precluded from having an automatic daily pre-occupancy purge cycle that provides daily outdoor air ventilation during unrented periods at the design ventilation rate for 60 minutes, or at a rate and duration equivalent to one air change.

C 403.7.7 Shutoff dampers (Mandatory). Outdoor air intake and exhaust openings and stairway and shaft vents shall be provided with Class I motorized dampers. The dampers shall have an air leakage rate not greater than 4 cfm/ft² (20.3 L/s · m²) of damper surface area at 1.0 inch water gauge (249 Pa) and shall be labeled by an approved agency when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D for such purpose. The dampers shall be labeled by an approved agency.

C 403.8 Fans and fan controls. Fans in HVAC systems shall comply with Sections C 403.8.1 through C 403.8.5.1.

C 403.8.1 Allowable fan horsepower (Mandatory). Each HVAC system having a total fan system motor nameplate horsepower exceeding 5 hp (3.7 kW) at fan system design conditions shall not exceed the allowable fan system motor nameplate hp (Option 1) or fan system bhp (Option 2) shown in Table C 403.8.1(1). This includes supply fans, exhaust fans, return/relief fans, and fan-powered terminal units associated with systems providing heating or cooling capability. Single-zone variable air volume systems shall comply with the constant volume fan power limitation.

Exceptions:

1. Hospital, vivarium and laboratory systems that utilize flow control devices on exhaust or return to maintain space pressure relationships necessary for occupant health and safety or environmental control shall be permitted to use variable volume fan power limitation.

2. Individual exhaust fans with motor nameplate horsepower of 1 hp (0.746 kW) or less are exempt from the allowable fan horsepower requirement.

C 403.8.2 Motor nameplate horsepower (Mandatory). For each fan, the fan brake horsepower shall be indicated on the construction documents and the selected motor shall not be larger than the first available motor size greater than the following:

1. For fans less than 6 bhp (4413 W), 1.5 times the fan brake horsepower.

2. For fans 6 bhp (4413 W) and larger, 1.3 times the fan brake horsepower.

3. Systems complying with Section C 403.8.1 fan system motor nameplate hp (Option 1).

Exception: Fans with motor nameplate horsepower less than 1 hp (746 W) are exempt from this section.

C 403.8.3 Fan efficiency (Mandatory). Fans shall have a fan efficiency grade (FEG) of not less than 67, as determined in accordance with A MCA 205 by an approved,
independent testing laboratory and labeled by the manufacturer. The total efficiency of the fan at the design point of operation shall be within 15 percentage points of the maximum total efficiency of the fan.

**Exception:** The following fans are not required to have a fan efficiency grade:

1. Fans of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less as follows:
   1.1. Individual fans with a motor nameplate horsepower of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less, unless Exception 1.2 applies.
   1.2. Multiple fans in series or parallel that have a combined motor nameplate horsepower of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less and are operated as the functional equivalent of a single fan.

2. Fans that are part of equipment covered in Section C403.3.2.

3. Fans included in an equipment package certified by an approved agency for air or energy performance.

### Table C403.8.1(1)

**Fan Power Limitation**

| Option 1: Fan system motor nameplate hp | Allowable nameplate motor hp | hp ≤ CFMₜ × 0.0011 | hp ≤ CFMₜ × 0.0015 |
| Option 2: Fan system bhp | Allowable fan system bhp | bhp ≤ CFMₜ × 0.00094 + A | bhp ≤ CFMₜ × 0.0013 + A |

For SI: 1 bhp = 735.5 W, 1 hp = 745.5 W, 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.

where:

- **CFMₜ** = The maximum design supply airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system in cubic feet per minute.
- **hp** = The maximum combined motor nameplate horsepower.
- **bhp** = The maximum combined fan brake horsepower.
- **A** = Sum of \( PD \times CFM₀ / 4131 \).

where:

- **PD** = Each applicable pressure drop adjustment from Table C403.8.1(2) in. w.c.
- **CFM₀** = The design airflow through each applicable device from Table C403.8.1(2) in cubic feet per minute.

### Table C403.8.1(2)

**Fan Power Limitation Pressure Drop Adjustment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device</th>
<th>Adjustment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Return air or exhaust systems required by code or accreditation</td>
<td>0.5 inch w.c. (2.15 inches w.c. for laboratory and vivarium systems)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return and exhaust airflow control devices</td>
<td>0.5 inch w.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhaust filters, scrubbers or other exhaust treatment</td>
<td>The pressure drop of device calculated at fan system design condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particulate filtration credit: MERV 9 thru 12</td>
<td>0.5 inch w.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particulate filtration credit: MERV 13 thru 15</td>
<td>0.9 inch w.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particulate filtration credit: MERV 16 and greater and electronically enhanced filters</td>
<td>Pressure drop calculated at 2x clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners</td>
<td>Clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biosafety cabinet</td>
<td>Pressure drop of device at fan system design condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy recovery device, other than coil runaround loop</td>
<td>For each airstream, ( (2.2 \times \text{energy recovery effectiveness} – 0.5) ) inch w.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coil runaround loop</td>
<td>0.6 inch w.c. for each airstream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaporative humidifier/cooler in series with another cooling coil</td>
<td>Pressure drop of device at fan system design conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound attenuation section (fans serving spaces with design background noise goals below NC35)</td>
<td>0.15 inch w.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhaust system serving fume hoods</td>
<td>0.35 inch w.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory and vivarium exhaust systems in high-rise buildings</td>
<td>0.25 inch w.c./100 feet of vertical duct exceeding 75 feet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Deductions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deductions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systems without central cooling device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems without central heating device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems with central electric resistance heat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch w.c. = 249 Pa, 1 inch = 25.4 mm. w.c. = water column, NC = Noise criterion.
4. Powered wall/roof ventilators.
5. Fans outside the scope of A MCA 205.
6. Fans that are intended to operate only during emergency conditions.

C 403.8.4 Fractional hp fan motors (Mandatory). Motors for fans that are not less than \( \frac{1}{12} \) hp (0.062 kW) and less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) shall be electronically commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70 percent, rated in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431. These motors shall have the means to adjust motor speed for either balancing or remote control. The use of belt-driven fans to sheave adjustments for airflow balancing instead of a varying motor speed shall be permitted.

Exceptions: The following motors are not required to comply with this section:
1. Motors in the airstream within fan coils and terminal units that only provide heating to the space served.
2. Motors in space-conditioning equipment that comply with Section C403.3.2 or Sections C403.8.1 through C403.8.3.
3. Motors that comply with Section C405.7.

C 403.8.5 Low-capacity ventilation fans. Mechanical ventilation system fans less than \( \frac{1}{12} \) horsepower in capacity shall meet the efficacy requirements of Table C403.8.5.

Exceptions:
1. Where ventilation fans are a component of a listed heating or cooling appliance.
2. Dryer exhaust duct power ventilators, domestic range hoods and domestic range booster fans that operate intermittently.

**TABLE C403.8.5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FAN LOCATION</th>
<th>AIR FLOW RATE MINIMUM (CFM)</th>
<th>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY (CFM/WATT)</th>
<th>AIR FLOW RATE MAXIMUM (CFM)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HRV or ERV</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>1.2 cfm/watt</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-line fan</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>3.8 cfm/watt</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathroom, utility room</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2.8 cfm/watt</td>
<td>&lt; 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathroom, utility room</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>3.5 cfm/watt</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C 403.8.6 Fan control. Controls shall be provided for fans in accordance with Section C403.8.6.1 and as required for specific systems provided in Section 403.

C 403.8.6.1 Fan airflow control. Each cooling system listed in Table C403.8.6.1 shall be designed to vary the indoor fan airflow as a function of load and shall comply with the following requirements:
1. Direct expansion (DX) and chilled water cooling units that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of fan control.

Low or minimum speed shall not be greater than 66 percent of full speed. At low or minimum speed, the fan system shall draw not more than 40 percent of the fan power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and ventilation-only operation.

2. Other units including DX cooling units and chilled water units that control the space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space shall have modulating fan control. Minimum speed shall be not greater than 50 percent of full speed. At minimum speed the fan system shall draw not more than 30 percent of the power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and ventilation-only operation.

3. Units that include an air-side economizer in accordance with Section C403.5 shall have not fewer than two speeds of fan control during economizer operation.

Exceptions:
1. Modulating fan control is not required for chilled water and evaporative cooling units with fan motors of less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) where the units are not used to provide ventilation air and the indoor fans cycles with the load.
2. Where the volume of outdoor air required to comply with the ventilation requirements of the International Mechanical Code at low speed exceeds the air that would be delivered at the speed defined in Section C403.8.6, the minimum speed shall be selected to provide the required ventilation air.

**TABLE C403.8.6.1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COOLING SYSTEM TYPE</th>
<th>FAN MOTOR SIZE</th>
<th>MECHANICAL COOLING CAPACITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DX cooling</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>≥ 65,000 Btu/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chilled water</td>
<td>1/4 hp</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and evaporative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cooling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W; 1 hp = 0.746 kW.

C 403.9 Heat rejection equipment. Heat rejection equipment, including air-cooled condensers, dry coolers, open-circuit cooling towers, closed-circuit cooling towers and evaporative condensers, shall comply with this section.

Exception: Heat rejection devices where energy usage is included in the equipment efficiency ratings listed in Tables C403.3.2(6) and C403.3.2(7).

C 403.9.1 Fan speed control. Each fan system powered by an individual motor or array of motors with connected power, including the motor service factor, totaling 5 hp (3.7 kW) or more shall have controls and devices configured to automatically modulate the fan speed to control the leaving fluid temperature or condensing temperature and pressure of the heat rejection device. Fan motor power
C403.10 Refrigeration equipment performance. Refrigeration equipment shall have an energy use in kWh/day not greater than the values of Tables C403.10.1(1) and C403.10.1(2) when tested and rated in accordance with A HRI Standard 1200. The energy use shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the energy use shall be supported by data furnished by the equipment manufacturer.

C403.10.1 Walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers (Mandatory). Refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall comply with this section. Walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers that are neither site assembled nor site constructed shall comply with the following:

1. Be equipped with automatic door-closers that firmly close walk-in doors that have been closed to within 1 inch (25 mm) of full closure.

   Exception: A automatic closers are not required for doors more than 45 inches (1143 mm) in width or more than 7 feet (2134 mm) in height.

2. Doorways shall have strip doors, curtains, spring-hinged doors or other method of minimizing infiltration when doors are open.

3. Walk-in coolers and refrigerated warehouse coolers shall contain wall, ceiling, and door insulation of not less than R-25 and walk-in freezers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall contain wall, ceiling and door insulation of not less than R-32.

   Exception: Glazed portions of doors or structural members need not be insulated.

4. Walk-in freezers shall contain floor insulation of not less than R-28.

5. Transparent reach-in doors for walk-in freezers and windows in walk-in freezer doors shall be of triple-pane glass, either filled with inert gas or with heat-reflective treated glass.

6. Windows and transparent reach-in doors for walk-in coolers shall be of double-pane or triple-pane, inert gas-filled, heat-reflective treated glass.

7. Evaporator fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) and less than 460 volts shall use electronically commutated motors, brushless direct-current motors, or 3-phase motors.

8. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) shall use electronically commutated motors, permanent split capacitor-type motors or 3-phase motors.

9. Where antisuweat heaters without antisweat heater controls are provided, they shall have a total door rail, glass and frame heater power draw of not more than 7.1 W/ft² (76 W/m²) of door opening for walk-in freezers and 3.0 W/ft² (32 W/m²) of door opening for walk-in coolers.

10. Where antisweat heater controls are provided, they shall reduce the energy use of the antisweat heater as a function of the relative humidity in the air outside the door or to the condensation on the inner glass pane.
11. Lights in walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall either use light sources with an efficacy of not less than 40 lumens per watt, including ballast losses, or shall use light sources with an efficacy of not less than 40 lumens per watt, including ballast losses, in conjunction with a device that turns off the lights within 15 minutes when the space is not occupied.

C 403.10.2 Walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers (Mandatory). Site-assembled or site-constructed walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers shall comply with the following:

1. Automatic door closers shall be provided that fully close walk-in doors that have been closed to within 1 inch (25 mm) of full closure.
   **Exception:** Closers are not required for doors more than 45 inches (1143 mm) in width or more than 7 feet (2134 mm) in height.

2. Doorways shall be provided with strip doors, curtains, spring-hinged doors or other method of minimizing infiltration when the doors are open.

3. Walls shall be provided with insulation having a thermal resistance of not less than R-25, ceilings shall be provided with insulation having a thermal resistance of not less than R-25 and doors of walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers shall be provided with insulation having a thermal resistance of not less than R-32.
   **Exception:** Insulation is not required for glazed portions of doors or at structural members associated with the walls, ceiling or door frame.

4. The floor of walk-in freezers shall be provided with insulation having a thermal resistance of not less than R-28.

5. Transparent reach-in doors for and windows in opaque walk-in freezer doors shall be provided with triple-pane glass having the interstitial spaces filled with inert gas or provided with heat-reflective treated glass.

6. Transparent reach-in doors for and windows in opaque walk-in cooler doors shall be double-pane heat-reflective treated glass having the interstitial space gas filled.

7. Evaporator fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) and less than 460 volts shall be electronically commutated motors or 3-phase motors.

8. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) in capacity shall be of the electronically commutated or permanent split capacitor-type or shall be 3-phase motors.
   **Exception:** Fan motors in walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers combined in a single enclosure greater than 3,000 square feet (279 m²) in floor area are exempt.

9. Antisweat heaters that are not provided with antisweat heater controls shall have a total door rail, glass and frame heater power draw not greater than 7.1 W/ft² (76 W/m²) of door opening for walk-in freezers, and not greater than 3.0 W/ft² (32 W/m²) of door opening for walk-in coolers.

10. Antisweat heater controls shall be configured to reduce the energy use of the antisweat heater as a function of the relative humidity in the air outside the door or to the condensation on the inner glass pane.

11. Light sources shall have an efficacy of not less than 40 lumens per Watt, including any ballast losses, or shall be provided with a device that automatically turns off the lights within 15 minutes of when the walk-in cooler or walk-in freezer was last occupied.

### TABLE C403.10.1(1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>APPLICATION</th>
<th>ENERGY USE LIMITS (kWh per day)*</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerator with solid doors</td>
<td>Holding Temperature</td>
<td>0.10 × V + 2.04</td>
<td>AHR 1200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerator with transparent doors</td>
<td>Holding Temperature</td>
<td>0.12 × V + 3.34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freezers with solid doors</td>
<td>Holding Temperature</td>
<td>0.40 × V + 1.38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freezers with transparent doors</td>
<td>Holding Temperature</td>
<td>0.75 × V + 4.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerators/freezers with solid doors</td>
<td>Pulldown</td>
<td>the greater of 0.12 × V + 3.34 or 0.70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial refrigerators</td>
<td>Pulldown</td>
<td>0.126 × V + 3.51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. V = volume of the chiller or frozen compartment as defined in A.H.A.M.-H.R.F.-1.
**TABLE C403.10.1(2)**

**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATORS AND FREEZERS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equipment Class</th>
<th>Family Code</th>
<th>Operating Mode</th>
<th>Rating Temperature</th>
<th>ENERGY USE LIMITS (kWh/day)**a, b</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VOP.RC.M</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>0.82 x TDA + 4.07</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVO.RC.M</td>
<td>Semi</td>
<td>Vertical condensing</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>0.83 x TDA + 3.18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HZO.RC.M</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>0.35 x TDA + 2.88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOP.RC.L</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>2.27 x TDA + 6.85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HZO.RC.L</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>0.57 x TDA + 6.88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCT.RC.M</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Transparent door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.22 x TDA + 1.95</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCT.RC.L</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Transparent door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.56 x TDA + 2.61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC.RC.M</td>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Over counter</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.51 x TDA + 0.11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOP.SC.M</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Ice cream</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>1.74 x TDA + 4.71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVO.SC.M</td>
<td>Semivertical</td>
<td>Ice cream</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>1.73 x TDA + 4.59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HZO.SC.M</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Ice cream</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>0.77 x TDA + 5.55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HZO.SC.L</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Ice cream</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>1.92 x TDA + 7.08</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCT.SC.I</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Transparent door</td>
<td>Self-contained</td>
<td>0.67 x TDA + 3.29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCS.SC.I</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Solid door</td>
<td>Self-contained</td>
<td>0.38 x V + 0.88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCT.SC.I</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Transparent door</td>
<td>Self-contained</td>
<td>0.56 x TDA + 0.43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVO.RC.L</td>
<td>Semivertical</td>
<td>Ice cream</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>2.27 x TDA + 6.85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOP.RC.I</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Ice cream</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>2.89 x TDA + 8.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVO.RC.I</td>
<td>Semivertical</td>
<td>Ice cream</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>2.89 x TDA + 8.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HZO.RC.I</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Ice cream</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.72 x TDA + 8.74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCT.RC.I</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Transparent door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.66 x TDA + 3.05</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCT.RC.M</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Transparent door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.16 x TDA + 0.13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCT.RC.L</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Transparent door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.34 x TDA + 0.26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCT.RC.I</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Transparent door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.4 x TDA + 0.31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCS.RC.M</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Solid door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.11 x V + 0.26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCS.RC.L</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Solid door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.23 x V + 0.54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCS.RC.I</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Solid door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.27 x V + 0.63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCS.RC.M</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Solid door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.11 x V + 0.26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCS.RC.L</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Solid door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.23 x V + 0.54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCS.RC.I</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Solid door</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>0.27 x V + 0.63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC.RC.L</td>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Over counter</td>
<td>Remote condensing</td>
<td>1.08 x TDA + 0.22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
C 403.10.2.1 Performance standards (Mandatory).
Effective January 1, 2020, walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers shall meet the requirements of Tables C 403.10.2.1(1), C 403.10.2.1(2) and C 403.10.2.1(3).

C 403.10.3 Refrigerated display cases (Mandatory).
Site-assembled or site-constructed refrigerated display cases shall comply with the following:

1. Lighting and glass doors in refrigerated display cases shall be controlled by one of the following:
   1.1. Time-switch controls to turn off lights during nonbusiness hours. Timed overrides for display cases shall turn the lights on for up to 1 hour and shall automatically time out to turn the lights off.
   1.2. Motion sensor controls on each display case section that reduce lighting power by not less than 50 percent within 3 minutes after the area within the sensor range is vacated.

2. Low-temperature display cases shall incorporate temperature-based defrost termination control with a time-limit default. The defrost cycle shall terminate first on an upper temperature limit breach and second upon a time limit breach.

3. Antisweat heater controls shall reduce the energy use of the antisweat heater as a function of the relative humidity in the air outside the door or to the condensation on the inner glass pane.

C 403.10.4 Refrigeration systems. Refrigerated display cases, walk-in coolers or walk-in freezers that are served by remote compressors and remote condensers not located in a condensing unit, shall comply with Sections C 403.10.4.1 and C 403.10.4.2.

Exception: Systems where the working fluid in the refrigeration cycle goes through both subcritical and super-critical states (transcritical) or that use ammonia refrigerant are exempt.

C 403.10.4.1 Condensers serving refrigeration systems. Fan-powered condensers shall comply with the following:

1. The design saturated condensing temperatures for air-cooled condensers shall not exceed the design dry-bulb temperature plus 10°F (5.6°C) for low-temperature refrigeration systems, and the design dry-bulb temperature plus 15°F (8°C) for medium temperature refrigeration systems where the saturated condensing temperature for blend refrigerants shall be determined using the
average of liquid and vapor temperatures as converted from the condenser drain pressure.

2. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.75 kW) shall use electronically commutated motors, permanent split-capacitor-type motors or 3-phase motors.

3. Condenser fans for air-cooled condensers, evaporatively cooled condensers, air- or water-cooled fluid coolers or cooling towers shall reduce fan motor demand to not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume, and incorporate one of the following continuous variable speed fan control approaches:

   3.1. Refrigeration system condenser control for air-cooled condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient dry-bulb temperature.

   3.2. Refrigeration system condenser control for evaporatively cooled condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient wet-bulb temperature.

4. Multiple fan condensers shall be controlled in unison.

5. The minimum condensing temperature setpoint shall be not greater than 70°F (21°C).

C403.10.4.2 Compressor systems. Refrigeration compressor systems shall comply with the following:

1. Compressors and multiple-compressor system suction groups shall include control systems that use floating suction pressure control logic to reset the target suction pressure temperature based on the temperature requirements of the attached refrigeration display cases or walk-ins.

   Exception: Controls are not required for the following:

   1. Single-compressor systems that do not have variable capacity capability.

   2. Suction groups that have a design saturated suction temperature of 30°F (-1.1°C) or higher, suction groups that comprise the high stage of a two-stage or cascade system, or suction groups that primarily serve chillers for secondary cooling fluids.

2. Liquid subcooling shall be provided for all low-temperature compressor systems with a design cooling capacity equal to or greater than 100,000 Btu/h (29.3 kW) with a design-saturated suction temperature of -10°F (-23°C) or lower. The subcooled liquid temperature shall be controlled at a maximum temperature setpoint of 50°F (10°C) at the exit of the subcooler using either compressor economizer (interstage) ports or a separate com-
pressure group operating at a saturated suction temperature of 18°F (-7.8°C) or higher.

2.1. Insulation for liquid lines with a fluid operating temperature less than 60°F (15.6°C) shall comply with Table C403.11.3.

3. Compressors that incorporate internal or external crankcase heaters shall provide a means to cycle the heaters off during compressor operation.

C 403.11 Construction of HVAC system elements (Mandatory). Ducts, plenums, piping and other elements that are part of an HVAC system shall be constructed and insulated in accordance with Sections C403.11.1 through C403.11.3.1.

C403.11.1 Duct and plenum insulation and sealing (Mandatory). Supply and return air ducts and plenums shall be insulated with not less than R-6 insulation where located in unconditioned spaces and where located outside the building with not less than R-12 insulation. Where located within a building envelope assembly, the duct or plenum shall be separated from the building exterior or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than R-12 insulation.

Exceptions:
1. Where located within equipment.
2. Where the design temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the duct or plenum is not greater than 15°F (8°C).

Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with Section 603.9 of the International Mechanical Code.

C 403.11.2 Duct construction (Mandatory). Ductwork shall be constructed and erected in accordance with the International Mechanical Code.

C403.11.2.1 Low-pressure duct systems (Mandatory). Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections of supply and return ducts operating at a static pressure less than or equal to 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (498 Pa) shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mastict-plus-embedded-fabric systems or tapes installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Pressure classifications specific to the duct system shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents in accordance with the International Mechanical Code.

Exception: Locking-type longitudinal joints and seams, other than the snap-lock and button-lock types, need not be sealed as specified in this section.

C403.11.2.2 Medium-pressure duct systems (Mandatory). Ducts and plenums designed to operate at a static pressure greater than 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (498 Pa) but less than 3 inches w.g. (747 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with Section C403.11.1. Pressure classifications specific to the duct system shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents in accordance with the International Mechanical Code.

C403.11.2.3 High-pressure duct systems (Mandatory). Ducts and plenums designed to operate at static pressures equal to or greater than 3 inches water gauge (747 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with Section C403.11.1. In addition, ducts and plenums shall be leak tested in accordance with the SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual and shown to have a rate of air leakage (CL) less than or equal to 4.0 as determined in accordance with Equation 4-7.

\[
CL = F/P^{0.65} 
\]

(Equation 4-7)

where:

F = The measured leakage rate in cfm per 100 square feet of duct surface.
P = The static pressure of the test.

Documentation shall be furnished by the designer demonstrating that representative sections totaling not less than 25 percent of the duct area have been tested and that all tested sections comply with the requirements of this section.

C 403.11.3 Piping insulation (Mandatory). Piping serving as part of a heating or cooling system shall be thermally insulated in accordance with Table C403.11.3.

Exceptions:
1. Factory-installed piping within HVAC equipment tested and rated in accordance with a test procedure referenced by this code.
2. Factory-installed piping within room fan-coils and unit ventilators tested and rated according to AHRI 440 (except that the sampling and variation provisions of Section 6.5 shall not apply) and AHRI 840, respectively.
3. Piping that conveys fluids that have a design operating temperature range between 60°F (15°C) and 105°F (41°C).
4. Piping that conveys fluids that have not been heated or cooled through the use of fossil fuels or electric power.
5. Strainers, control valves, and balancing valves associated with piping 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter.
6. Direct buried piping that conveys fluids at or below 60°F (15°C).

C 403.11.3.1 Protection of piping insulation (Mandatory). Piping insulation exposed to the weather shall be protected from damage, including that caused by sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind, and shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall not be permitted.

C 403.12 Mechanical systems located outside of the building thermal envelope (Mandatory). Mechanical systems providing heat outside of the thermal envelope of a building shall comply with Sections C403.12.1 through C403.12.3.

C 403.12.1 Heating outside a building. Systems installed to provide heat outside a building shall be radiant systems.

Such heating systems shall be controlled by an occupancy sensing device or a timer switch, so that the system is automatically de-energized when occupants are not present.
C403.2 Snow- and ice-melt system controls. Snow- and ice-melting systems shall include automatic controls configured to shut off the system when the pavement temperature is above 50°F (10°C) and precipitation is not falling, and an automatic or manual control that is configured to shut off when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (4°C).

C403.12.3 Freeze protection system controls. Freeze protection systems, such as heat tracing of outdoor piping and heat exchangers, including self-regulating heat tracing, shall include automatic controls configured to shut off the systems when outdoor air temperatures are above 40°F (4°C) or when the conditions of the protected fluid will prevent freezing.

### TABLE C403.11.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLUID OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE AND USAGE (°F)</th>
<th>INSULATION CONDUCTIVITY</th>
<th>NOMINAL PIPE OR TUBE SIZE (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conductivity Btu · in./(h · ft² · °F)</td>
<td>Mean Rating Temperature, °F</td>
<td>&lt; 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 350</td>
<td>0.32 - 0.34</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251 - 350</td>
<td>0.29 - 0.32</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 - 250</td>
<td>0.27 - 0.30</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141 - 200</td>
<td>0.25 - 0.29</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105 - 140</td>
<td>0.21 - 0.28</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 - 60</td>
<td>0.21 - 0.27</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 40</td>
<td>0.20 - 0.26</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

a. For piping smaller than 1½ inches and located in partitions within conditioned spaces, reduction of these thicknesses by 1 inch shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in footnote b) but not to a thickness less than 1 inch.

b. For insulation outside the stated conductivity range, the minimum thickness (T) shall be determined as follows:

\[
T = \frac{K}{k} \left( 1 + \frac{t}{r} \right)^{k - 1}
\]

where:
- \( T \) = minimum insulation thickness,
- \( r \) = actual outside radius of pipe,
- \( t \) = insulation thickness listed in the table for applicable fluid temperature and pipe size,
- \( K \) = conductivity of alternate material at mean rating temperature indicated for the applicable fluid temperature (Btu · in/h · ft² · °F) and
- \( k \) = the upper value of the conductivity range listed in the table for the applicable fluid temperature.

c. For direct-buried heating and hot water system piping, reduction of these thicknesses by 1½ inches (38 mm) shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in footnote b) but not to thicknesses less than 1 inch.

C404 SERVICE WATER HEATING (MANDATORY)

C404.1 General. This section covers the minimum efficiency of, and controls for, service water-heating equipment and insulation of service hot water piping.

C404.2 Service water-heating equipment performance efficiency. Water-heating equipment and hot water storage tanks shall meet the requirements of Table C404.2. The efficiency shall be verified through data furnished by the manufacturer of the equipment or through certification under an approved certification program. Water-heating equipment intended to be used to provide space heating shall meet the applicable provisions of Table C404.2.

C404.2.1 High input service water-heating systems. Gas-fired water-heating equipment installed in new buildings shall be in compliance with this section. Where a singular piece of water-heating equipment serves the entire building and the input rating of the equipment is 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) or greater, such equipment shall have a thermal efficiency, \( E_p \), of not less than 92 percent. Where multiple pieces of water-heating equipment serve the building and the combined input rating of the water-heating equipment is 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) or greater, the combined input-capacity-weighted-average thermal efficiency, \( E_p \), shall be not less than 90 percent.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where not less than 25 percent of the annual service water-heating requirement is provided by on-site renewable energy or site-recovered energy, the minimum thermal efficiency requirements of this section shall not apply.

2. The input rating of water heaters installed in individual dwelling units shall not be required to be included in the total input rating of service water-heating equipment for a building.

3. The input rating of water heaters with an input rating of not greater than 100,000 Btu/h (29.3 kW) shall not be required to be included in the total input rating of service water-heating equipment for a building.

C404.3 Heat traps for hot water storage tanks. Storage tank-type water heaters and hot water storage tanks that have vertical water pipes connecting to the inlet and outlet of the tank shall be provided with integral heat traps at those inlets and outlets or shall have pipe-configured heat traps in the piping connected to those inlets and outlets. Tank inlets and outlets associated with solar water-heating system circulation loops shall not be required to have heat traps.
## TABLE C404.2
### MINIMUM PERFORMANCE OF WATER-HEATING EQUIPMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY (input)</th>
<th>SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION</th>
<th>PERFORMANCE REQUIRED&lt;sup&gt;a, b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Water heaters, electric</td>
<td>≤ 12 kW&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Tabletop&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt; &gt; 20 gallons and ≤ 120 gallons</td>
<td>0.93 - 0.00132 V&lt;sub&gt;Ef&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>DOE 10 CFR Part 430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Resistance ≥ 20 gallons and ≤ 55 gallons</td>
<td>0.960 - 0.0003 V&lt;sub&gt;Ef&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Grid-enabled&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt; &gt; 75 gallons and ≤ 120 gallons</td>
<td>1.061 - 0.00168 V&lt;sub&gt;Ef&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 12 kW</td>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>(0.3 + 27/V&lt;sub&gt;m&lt;/sub&gt;), %/h</td>
<td>ANSI Z21.10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≤ 24 amps and ≤ 250 volts</td>
<td>Heat pump &gt; 55 gallons and ≤ 120 gallons</td>
<td>2.057 - 0.00113 V&lt;sub&gt;Ef&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>DOE 10 CFR Part 430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage water heaters, gas</td>
<td>≤ 75,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>≥ 20 gallons and ≤ 55 gallons</td>
<td>0.675 - 0.0015 V&lt;sub&gt;Ef&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>DOE 10 CFR Part 430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 55 gallons and ≤ 100 gallons</td>
<td>0.8012 - 0.00078 V&lt;sub&gt;Ef&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 75,000 Btu/h and ≤ 155,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>&lt;4,000 Btu/h/gal</td>
<td>80% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt; (Q/800 + 110√V)&lt;sub&gt;SL&lt;/sub&gt; Btu/h,</td>
<td>ANSI Z21.10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 155,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>&lt;4,000 Btu/h/gal</td>
<td>80% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt; (Q/800 + 110√V)&lt;sub&gt;SL&lt;/sub&gt; Btu/h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instantaneous water heaters, gas</td>
<td>&gt; 50,000 Btu/h and &lt;200,000 Btu/hr</td>
<td>≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and &lt;2 gal</td>
<td>0.82 - 0.0019 V&lt;sub&gt;Ef&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>DOE 10 CFR Part 430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 200,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and &lt;10 gal</td>
<td>80% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>ANSI Z21.10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 200,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal</td>
<td>80% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt; (Q/800 + 110√V)&lt;sub&gt;SL&lt;/sub&gt; Btu/h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage water heaters, oil</td>
<td>≤ 105,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>≥ 20 gal and ≤ 50 gallons</td>
<td>0.68 - 0.0019 V&lt;sub&gt;Ef&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>DOE 10 CFR Part 430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 105,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>&lt;4,000 Btu/h/gal</td>
<td>80% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt; (Q/800 + 110√V)&lt;sub&gt;SL&lt;/sub&gt; Btu/h</td>
<td>ANSI Z21.10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instantaneous water heaters, oil</td>
<td>≤ 210,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and &lt;2 gal</td>
<td>0.59 - 0.0019 V&lt;sub&gt;Ef&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>DOE 10 CFR Part 430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 210,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and &lt;10 gal</td>
<td>80% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>ANSI Z21.10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 210,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal</td>
<td>78% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt; (Q/800 + 110√V)&lt;sub&gt;SL&lt;/sub&gt; Btu/h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot water supply boilers, gas and oil</td>
<td>≥ 300,000 Btu/h and &lt;12,500,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and &lt;10 gal</td>
<td>80% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>ANSI Z21.10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 300,000 Btu/h and &lt;12,500,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal</td>
<td>80% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt; (Q/800 + 110√V)&lt;sub&gt;SL&lt;/sub&gt; Btu/h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot water supply boilers, gas</td>
<td>≥ 300,000 Btu/h and &lt;12,500,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>&gt; 4,000 Btu/h/gal and &gt;10 gal</td>
<td>78% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt; (Q/800 + 110√V)&lt;sub&gt;SL&lt;/sub&gt; Btu/h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 300,000 Btu/h and &lt;12,500,000 Btu/h</td>
<td>&gt;4,000 Btu/h/gal and &gt;10 gal</td>
<td>78% E&lt;sub&gt;i&lt;/sub&gt; (Q/800 + 110√V)&lt;sub&gt;SL&lt;/sub&gt; Btu/h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Pool heaters, gas and oil | All | — | 82% E<sub>i</sub> | ASHRAE 146 | (continued)
TABLE C404.2—continued
MINIMUM PERFORMANCE OF WATER-HEATING EQUIPMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EQUIPMENT TYPE</th>
<th>SIZE CATEGORY (input)</th>
<th>SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION</th>
<th>PERFORMANCE REQUIRED*</th>
<th>TEST PROCEDURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heat pump pool heaters</td>
<td>A II</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>4.0 COP</td>
<td>AHRI 1160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unfired storage tanks</td>
<td>A II</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Minimum insulation requirement R-12.5 (h • ft² • °F)/Btu</td>
<td>(none)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m², °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 British thermal unit per hour per gallon = 0.078 W/L.

a. Energy factor (EF) and thermal efficiency (Eₜ) are minimum requirements. In the EF equation, V is the rated volume in gallons.

b. Standing loss (SL) is the maximum Btu/h based on a nominal 70°F temperature difference between stored water and ambient requirements. In the SL equation, Q is the nameplate input rate in Btu/h. In the equations for electric water heaters, V is the rated volume in gallons and Vₚ is the measured volume in gallons.

A tabletop water heater is a water heater that is enclosed in a rectangular cabinet with a flat top surface not more than 3 feet in height.

d. Electric water heaters with an input rating of 12 kW (40,950 Btu/h) or less that are designed to heat water to temperatures of 180°F or greater shall comply with the requirements for electric water heaters that have an input rating greater than 12 kW (40,950 Btu/h).

e. A grid-enabled water heater is an electric resistance water heater that meets all of the following:

1. Has a rated storage tank volume of more than 75 gallons.
2. Was manufactured on or after April 16, 2015.
3. Is equipped at the point of manufacture with an activation lock.
4. Bears a permanent label applied by the manufacturer that complies with all of the following:
   4.1. Is made of material not adversely affected by water.
   4.2. Is attached by means of nonwater-soluble adhesive.
   4.3. Advises purchasers and end users of the intended and appropriate use of the product with the following notice printed in 16.5 point Arial Narrow Bold font: “IMPORTANT INFORMATION: This water heater is intended only for use as part of an electric thermal storage or demand response program. It will not provide adequate hot water unless enrolled in such a program and activated by your utility company or another program operator. Confirm the availability of a program in your local area before purchasing or installing this product.”

C 404.4 Insulation of piping. Piping from a water heater to the termination of the heated water fixture supply pipe shall be insulated in accordance with Table C403.11.3. On both the inlet and outlet piping of a storage water heater or heated water storage tank, the piping to a heat trap or the first 8 feet (2438 mm) of piping, whichever is less, shall be insulated. Piping that is heat traced shall be insulated in accordance with Table C403.11.3 or the heat trace manufacturer’s instructions. Tubular pipe insulation shall be installed in accordance with the insulation manufacturer’s instructions. Pipe insulation shall be continuous except where the piping passes through a framing member. The minimum insulation thickness requirements of this section shall not supersede any greater insulation thickness requirements necessary for the protection of piping from freezing temperatures or the protection of personnel against external surface temperatures on the insulation.

Exception: Tubular pipe insulation shall not be required on the following:

1. The tubing from the connection at the termination of the fixture supply piping to a plumbing fixture or plumbing appliance.
2. Valves, pumps, strainers and threaded unions in piping that is 1 inch (25 mm) or less in nominal diameter.
3. Piping from user-controlled shower and bath mixing valves to the water outlets.
4. Cold-water piping of a demand recirculation water system.
5. Tubing from a hot drinking-water heating unit to the water outlet.
6. Piping at locations where a vertical support of the piping is installed.
7. Piping surrounded by building insulation with a thermal resistance (R-value) of not less than R-3.

C 404.5 Heated water supply piping. Heated water supply piping shall be in accordance with Section C404.5.1 or C404.5.2. The flow rate through 3/16-inch (6.4 mm) piping shall be not greater than 0.5 gpm (1.9 L/m). The flow rate through 3/8-inch (7.9 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1 gpm (3.8 L/m). The flow rate through 1/2-inch (9.5 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1.5 gpm (5.7 L/m).

C 404.5.1 Maximum allowable pipe length method. The maximum allowable piping length from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be in accordance with the following. Where the piping contains more than one size of pipe, the largest size of pipe within the piping shall be used for determining the maximum allowable length of the piping in Table C404.5.1.

1. For a public lavatory faucet, use the “Public lavatory faucets” column in Table C404.5.1.
2. For all other plumbing fixtures and plumbing appliances, use the “Other fixtures and appliances” column in Table C404.5.1.
C404.5.2 Maximum allowable pipe volume method. The water volume in the piping shall be calculated in accordance with Section C404.5.2.1. Water heaters, circulating water systems and heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be considered to be sources of heated water.

The volume from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be as follows:

1. For a public lavatory faucet: not more than 2 ounces (0.06 L).
2. For other plumbing fixtures or plumbing appliances: not more than 0.5 gallon (1.89 L).

C404.5.2.1 Water volume determination. The volume shall be the sum of the internal volumes of pipe, fittings, valves, meters and manifolds between the nearest source of heated water and the termination of the fixture supply pipe. The volume in the piping shall be determined from the “Volume” column in Table C404.5.1. The volume contained within fixture shut-off valves, within flexible water supply connectors to a fixture fitting and within a fixture fitting shall not be included in the water volume determination. Where heated water is supplied by a recirculating system or heat-traced piping, the volume shall include the portion of the fitting on the branch pipe that supplies water to the fixture.

C404.6 Heated-water circulating and temperature maintenance systems. Heated-water circulation systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.1. Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.2. Controls for hot water storage shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.3. Automatic controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be in a location with access. Manual controls shall be in a location with ready access.

C404.6.1 Circulation systems. Heated-water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe or a cold water supply pipe. Gravity and thermo-syphon circulation systems shall be prohibited. Controls for circulating hot water system pumps shall start the pump based on the identification of a demand for hot water within the occupancy. The controls shall automatically turn off the pump when the water in the circulation loop is at the desired temperature and when there is not a demand for hot water.

C404.6.2 Heat trace systems. Electric heat trace systems shall comply with IEEE 515.1. Controls for such systems shall be able to automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy. Heat trace shall be arranged to be turned off automatically when there is not a demand for hot water.

C404.6.3 Controls for hot water storage. The controls on pumps that circulate water between a water heater and a heated-water storage tank shall limit operation of the pump from heating cycle start up to not greater than 5 minutes after the end of the cycle.

C404.7 Demand recirculation controls. Demand recirculation water systems shall have controls that comply with both of the following:

1. The controls shall start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.
2. The controls shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold-water piping to not greater than 104°F (40°C).

C404.8 Drain water heat recovery units. Drain water heat recovery units shall comply with CSA B55.2. Potable water-side pressure loss shall be less than 10 psi (69 kPa) at maximum design flow. For Group R occupancies, the efficiency of drain water heat recovery unit efficiency shall be in accordance with CSA B55.1.

C404.9 Energy consumption of pools and permanent spas (Mandatory). The energy consumption of pools and permanent spas shall be controlled by the requirements in Sections C404.9.1 through C404.9.3.
C 404.9.1 Heaters. The electric power to all heaters shall be controlled by an on-off switch that is an integral part of the heater, mounted on the exterior of the heater, or external to and within 3 feet (914 mm) of the heater in a location with ready access. Operation of such switch shall not change the setting of the heater thermostat. Such switches shall be in addition to a circuit breaker for the power to the heater. Gas-fired heaters shall not be equipped with continuously burning ignition pilots.

C 404.9.2 Time switches. Time switches or other control methods that can automatically turn off and on heaters and pump motors according to a preset schedule shall be installed for heaters and pump motors. Heaters and pump motors that have built-in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.

Exceptions:
1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.

C 404.9.3 Covers. Outdoor heated pools and outdoor permanent spas shall be provided with a vapor-retardant cover or other approved vapor-retardant means.

Exception: Where more than 75 percent of the energy for heating, computed over an operating season of not fewer than 3 calendar months, is from site-recovered energy such as from a heat pump or on-site renewable energy system, covers or other vapor-retardant means shall not be required.

C 404.10 Energy consumption of portable spas (Mandatory). The energy consumption of electric-powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of APSP 14.

SECTION C 405
ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS

C 405.1 General (Mandatory). This section covers lighting system controls, the maximum lighting power for interior and exterior applications and electrical energy consumption.

C 405.1.1 Lighting for dwelling units. Not less than 90 percent of the luminaires in dwelling units shall be provided by lamps with an efficacy of not less than 65 lm/W or shall be luminaires with an efficacy of not less than 45 lm/W.

Exception: Lighting in accordance with Sections C 405.2.4 and C 405.3.

C 405.1.2 Lighting for refrigerated applications. Lighting installed in walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall comply with the lighting requirements of Section C 403.10.1 or C 403.10.2.

C 405.2 Lighting controls (Mandatory). Lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with one of the following.

1. Lighting controls as specified in Sections C 405.2.1 through C 405.2.6.

2. Luminaire level lighting controls (LLLCC) and lighting controls as specified in Sections C 405.2.1, C 405.2.4 and C 405.2.5. The LLLCC luminaire shall be independently capable of:
   2.1. Monitoring occupant activity to brighten or dim lighting when occupied or unoccupied, respectively.
   2.2. Monitoring ambient light, both electric light and daylight, and brighten or dim artificial light to maintain desired light level.
   2.3. For each control strategy, configuration and reconfiguration of performance parameters including; bright and dim setpoints, timeouts, dimming fade rates, sensor sensitivity adjustments, and wireless zoning configurations.

Exceptions: Lighting controls are not required for the following:
1. A recreation designated as security or emergency areas that are required to be continuously lighted.
2. Interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps and exit passageways.
3. Emergency egress lighting that is normally off.

C 405.2.1 Occupant sensor controls. Occupant sensor controls shall be installed to control lights in the following space types:

1. Classrooms/lecture/training rooms.
2. Conference/meeting/multipurpose rooms.
3. Copy/print rooms.
4. Lounges/breakrooms.
5. Enclosed offices.
6. Open plan office areas.
7. Restrooms.
8. Storage rooms.
9. Locker rooms.
10. Other spaces 300 square feet (28 m²) or less that are enclosed by floor-to-ceiling height partitions.
11. Warehouse storage areas.

C 405.2.1.1 Occupant sensor control function. Occupant sensor controls in warehouses shall comply with Section C 405.2.1.2. Occupant sensor controls in open plan office areas shall comply with Section C 405.2.1.3. Occupant sensor controls for all other spaces specified in Section C 405.2.1 shall comply with the following:

1. They shall automatically turn off lights within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space.
2. They shall be manual on or controlled to automatically turn on the lighting to not more than 50-percent power.

Exception: Full automatic-on controls shall be permitted to control lighting in public corridors, stairways, restrooms, primary building entrance areas and lobbies, and areas where manual-on operation would endanger the safety or security of the room or building occupants.
3. They shall incorporate a manual control to allow occupants to turn off lights.

C 405.2.1.2 Occupant sensor control function in warehouses. In warehouses, the lighting in aiseways and open areas shall be controlled with occupant sensors that automatically reduce lighting power by not less than 50 percent when the areas are unoccupied. The occupant sensors shall control lighting in each aiseway independently and shall not control lighting beyond the aiseway being controlled by the sensor.

C 405.2.1.3 Occupant sensor control function in open plan office areas. Occupant sensor controls in open plan office spaces less than 300 square feet (28 m²) in area shall comply with Section C405.2.1.1. Occupant sensor controls in all other open plan office spaces shall comply with all of the following:

1. The controls shall be configured so that general lighting can be controlled separately in control zones with floor areas not greater than 600 square feet (55 m²) within the open plan office space.
2. The controls shall automatically turn off general lighting in all control zones within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the open plan office space.
3. The controls shall be configured so that general lighting power in each control zone is reduced by not less than 80 percent of the full zone general lighting power in a reasonably uniform illumination pattern within 20 minutes of all occupants leaving that control zone. Control functions that switch control zone lights completely off when the zone is vacant meet this requirement.
4. The controls shall be configured such that any daylight responsive control will activate open plan office space general lighting or control zone general lighting only when occupancy for the same area is detected.

C 405.2.2 Time-switch controls. Each area of the building that is not provided with occupant sensor controls complying with Section C405.2.1.1 shall be provided with time-switch controls complying with Section C405.2.2.1.

Exception: Where a manual control provides light reduction in accordance with Section C405.2.2.2, time-switch controls shall not be required for the following:

1. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.
2. Spaces where an automatic shutoff would endanger occupant safety or security.
3. Lighting intended for continuous operation.
4. Shop and laboratory classrooms.

C 405.2.2.1 Time-switch control function. Each space provided with time-switch controls shall be provided with a manual control for light reduction in accordance with Section C405.2.2.2. Time-switch controls shall include an override switching device that complies with the following:

1. Have a minimum 7-day clock.
2. Be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.
3. Incorporate an automatic holiday “shutoff” feature, which turns off all controlled lighting loads for not fewer than 24 hours and then resumes normally scheduled operations.
4. Have program backup capabilities, which prevent the loss of program and time settings for not fewer than 10 hours, if power is interrupted.
5. Include an override switch that complies with the following:

   5.1. The override switch shall be a manual control.
   5.2. The override switch, when initiated, shall permit the controlled lighting to remain on for not more than 2 hours.
   5.3. Any individual override switch shall control the lighting for an area not larger than 5,000 square feet (465 m²).

Exceptions:

1. Within mall concourses, auditoriums, sales areas, manufacturing facilities and sports arenas:

   1.1. The time limit shall be permitted to be greater than 2 hours, provided that the switch is a captive key device.

   1.2. The area controlled by the override switch shall not be limited to 5,000 square feet (465 m²) provided that such area is less than 20,000 square feet (1860 m²).

2. Where provided with manual control, the following areas are not required to have light reduction control:

   2.1. Spaces that have only one luminaire with a rated power of less than 100 watts.

   2.2. Spaces that use less than 0.6 watts per square foot (6.5 W/m²).

   2.3. Corridors, lobbies, electrical rooms and or mechanical rooms.

C 405.2.2.2 Light-reduction controls. Spaces required to have light-reduction controls shall have a manual control that allows the occupant to reduce the connected lighting load in a reasonably uniform illumination pattern by not less than 50 percent. Lighting reduction shall be achieved by one of the following or another approved method:

1. Controlling all lamps or luminaires.
2. Dual switching of alternate rows of luminaires, alternate luminaires or alternate lamps.

3. Switching the middle lamp luminaires independently of the outer lamps.

4. Switching each luminaire or each lamp.

**Exception:** Light reduction controls are not required in daylight zones with daylight responsive controls complying with Section C405.2.3.

**C405.2.3 Daylight-responsive controls.** Daylight-responsive controls complying with Section C405.2.3.1 shall be provided to control the electric lights within daylight zones in the following spaces:

1. Spaces with a total of more than 150 watts of general lighting within sidelit zones complying with Section C405.2.3.2. General lighting does not include lighting that is required to have specific application control in accordance with Section C405.2.4.

2. Spaces with a total of more than 150 watts of general lighting within toplit zones complying with Section C405.2.3.3.

**Exceptions:** Daylight responsive controls are not required for the following:

1. Spaces in health care facilities where patient care is directly provided.

2. Lighting that is required to have specific application control in accordance with Section C405.2.4.

3. Sidelit zones on the first floor above grade in Group A-2 and Group M occupancies.

4. New buildings where the total connected lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1 is not greater than the adjusted interior lighting power allowance ($L_{PA_{adj}}$) calculated in accordance with Equation 4-8:

\[
L_{PA_{adj}} = \left( L_{PA_{norm}} \times (1.0 - 0.4 \times \frac{UDZFA}{TBFA}) \right)
\]

*(Equation 4-8)*

where:

- $L_{PA_{adj}} =$ Adjusted building interior lighting power allowance in watts.
- $L_{PA_{norm}} =$ Normal building lighting power allowance in watts calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.2.
- $UDZFA =$ Uncontrolled daylight zone floor area is the sum of all sidelit and toplit zones, calculated in accordance with Sections C405.2.3.2 and C405.2.3.3, that do not have daylight responsive controls.
- $TBFA =$ Total building floor area is the sum of all floor areas included in the lighting power allowance calculation in Section C405.3.2.

**C405.2.3.1 Daylight-responsive control function.** Where required, daylight-responsive controls shall be provided within each space for control of lights in that space and shall comply with all of the following:

1. Lights in toplit zones in accordance with Section C405.2.3.3 shall be controlled independently of lights in sidelit zones in accordance with Section C405.2.3.2.

2. Daylight responsive controls within each space shall be configured so that they can be calibrated from within that space by authorized personnel.

3. Calibration mechanisms shall be in a location with ready access.

4. Where located in offices, classrooms, laboratories and library reading rooms, daylight responsive controls shall dim lights continuously from full light output to 15 percent of full light output or lower.

5. Daylight responsive controls shall be configured to completely shut off all controlled lights.

6. Lights in sidelit zones in accordance with Section C405.2.3.2 facing different cardinal orientations (within 45 degrees (0.79 rad) of due north, east, south, west) shall be controlled independently of each other.

**Exception:** Up to 150 watts of lighting in each space is permitted to be controlled together with lighting in a daylight zone facing a different cardinal orientation.

**C405.2.3.2 Sidelit zone.** The sidelit zone is the floor area adjacent to vertical fenestration that complies with all of the following:

1. Where the fenestration is located in a wall, the sidelit zone shall extend laterally to the nearest full-height wall, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the top of the fenestration, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest full-height wall, or up to 2 feet (610 mm), whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.3.2.

2. The area of the fenestration is not less than 24 square feet (2.23 m²).

3. The distance from the fenestration to any building or geological formation that would block access to daylight is greater than the height from the bottom of the fenestration to the top of the building or geologic formation.

4. The visible transmittance of the fenestration is not less than 0.20.

**C405.2.3.3 Toplit zone.** The toplit zone is the floor area underneath a roof fenestration assembly that complies with all of the following:

1. The toplit zone shall extend laterally and longitudinally beyond the edge of the roof fenestration assembly to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.7 times the ceiling height, whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.3.3(1).

2. Where the fenestration is located in a rooftop monitor, the toplit zone shall extend laterally to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times...
the ceiling height, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the fenestration, whichever is less, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.25 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the fenestration, whichever is less, as indicated in Figures C405.2.3.3(2) and C405.2.3.3(3).

3. Direct sunlight is not blocked from hitting the roof fenestration assembly at the peak solar angle on the summer solstice by buildings or geological formations.

4. The product of the visible transmittance of the roof fenestration assembly and the area of the rough opening of the roof fenestration assembly divided by the area of the toplit zone is not less than 0.008.

C 405.2.4 Specific application controls. Specific application controls shall be provided for the following:

1. The following lighting shall be controlled by an occupant sensor complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or a time-switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1. In addition, a manual control shall be provided to control such lighting separately from the general lighting in the space:
   1.1. Display and accent.
   1.2. Lighting in display cases.
   1.3. Supplemental task lighting, including permanently installed under-shelf or under-cabinet lighting.
   1.4. Lighting equipment that is for sale or demonstration in lighting education.

2. Sleeping units shall have control devices or systems that are configured to automatically switch off all permanently installed luminaires and switched receptacles within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the unit.

Exceptions:

1. Lighting and switched receptacles controlled by card key controls.
2. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.

FIGURE C405.2.3.2 SIDELIT ZONE

FIGURE C405.2.3.3(1) TOPLIT ZONE
3. Permanently installed luminaires within dwelling units shall be provided with controls complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or C405.2.2.2.

4. Lighting for nonvisual applications, such as plant growth and food warming, shall be controlled by a time switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1 that is independent of the controls for other lighting within the room or space.

C 405.2.5 Manual controls. Where required by this code, manual controls for lights shall comply with the following:

1. They shall be in a location with ready access to occupants.
2. They shall be located where the controlled lights are visible, or shall identify the area served by the lights and indicate their status.

C 405.2.6 Exterior lighting controls. Exterior lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with Sections C405.2.6.1 through C405.2.6.4. Decorative lighting systems shall comply with Sections C405.2.6.1, C405.2.6.2 and C405.2.6.4.

Exceptions:

1. Lighting for covered vehicle entrances and exits from buildings and parking structures where required for eye adaptation.
2. Lighting controlled from within dwelling units.

C 405.2.6.1 Daylight shutoff. Lights shall be automatically turned off when daylight is present and satisfies the lighting needs.

C 405.2.6.2 Decorative lighting shutoff. Building façade and landscape lighting shall automatically shut off from not later than 1 hour after business closing to not earlier than 1 hour before business opening.

C 405.2.6.3 Lighting setback. Lighting that is not controlled in accordance with Section C405.2.6.2 shall be...
controlled so that the total wattage of such lighting is automatically reduced by not less than 30 percent by selectively switching off or dimming luminaires at one of the following times:

1. From not later than midnight to not earlier than 6 a.m.
2. From not later than one hour after business closing to not earlier than one hour before business opening.
3. During any time where activity has not been detected for 15 minutes or more.

C405.2.6.4 Exterior time-switch control function. Time-switch controls for exterior lighting shall comply with the following:

1. They shall have a clock capable of being programmed for not fewer than 7 days.
2. They shall be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.
3. They shall incorporate an automatic holiday setback feature.
4. They shall have program backup capabilities that prevent the loss of program and time settings for a period of not less than 10 hours in the event that power is interrupted.

C405.2.7 Parking garage lighting control. Lighting for parking garages shall comply with the following:

1. Parking garage lighting shall have an automatic time-switch shutoff in accordance with Section C405.2.2.1.
2. Lighting power of each luminaire shall be automatically reduced by not less than 60 percent when there is no activity detected within a lighting zone for 20 minutes. Lighting zones for this requirement shall be not greater than 3,600 square feet.
3. Where lighting for eye adaptation is provided at covered vehicle entrances and exits from buildings and parking structures, such lighting shall be separately controlled by a device that automatically reduces lighting power by at least 50 percent from sunset to sunrise.
4. The power to luminaires within 30 feet of perimeter wall openings or fenestration shall automatically reduce in response to daylight by at least 50 percent.

Exceptions:

1. Where the opening or fenestration-to-wall-ratio is less than 40 percent as viewed from the interior and encompasses the vertical distance from the driving surface to the lowest structural element.
2. Where the distance from the opening or fenestration to any exterior daylight blocking obstruction is less than one-half the height from the bottom of the opening or fenestration to the top of the obstruction.
3. Where openings are obstructed by permanent screens or architectural elements restricting daylight entering the interior space.

C405.3 Interior lighting power requirements (Prescriptive). A building complies with this section where its total connected interior lighting power calculated under Section C405.3.1 is not greater than the interior lighting power allowance calculated under Section C405.3.2.

C405.3.1 Total connected interior lighting power. The total connected interior lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-9.

\[
TCLP = [LVL + BLL + LED + TRK + Other] 
\]

(Equation 4-9)

where:

- TCLP = Total connected lighting power (watts).
- LVL = For luminaires with lamps connected directly to building power, such as line voltage lamps, the rated wattage of the lamp.
- BLL = For luminaires incorporating a ballast or transformer, the rated input wattage of the ballast or transformer when operating that lamp.
- LED = For light-emitting diode luminaires with either integral or remote drivers, the rated wattage of the luminaire.
- TRK = For lighting track, cable conductor, rail conductor, and plug-in busway systems that allow the addition and relocation of luminaires without rewiring, the wattage shall be one of the following:
  1. The specified wattage of the luminaires, but not less than 8 W per linear foot (25 W/lin m).
  2. The wattage limit of the permanent current-limiting devices protecting the system.
  3. The wattage limit of the transformer supplying the system.

Other = The wattage of all other luminaires and lighting sources not covered previously and associated with interior lighting verified by data supplied by the manufacturer or other approved sources.

The connected power associated with the following lighting equipment and applications is not included in calculating total connected lighting power:

1. Television broadcast lighting for playing areas in sports arenas.
2. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal building operation.
3. Lighting in spaces specifically designed for use by occupants with special lighting needs, including those with visual impairment and other medical and age-related issues.
4. Casino gaming areas.
5. Mirror lighting in dressing rooms.
6. Task lighting for medical and dental purposes that is in addition to general lighting and controlled by an independent control device.

7. Display lighting for exhibits in galleries, museums and monuments that is in addition to general lighting and controlled by an independent control device.

8. Lighting for theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.


10. Lighting integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by the manufacturer.

11. Task lighting for plant growth or maintenance.

12. Advertising signage or directional signage.

13. Lighting for food warming.

14. Lighting equipment that is for sale.

15. Lighting demonstration equipment in lighting education facilities.

16. Lighting approved because of safety considerations.

17. Lighting in retail display windows, provided that the display area is enclosed by ceiling-height partitions.

18. Furniture-mounted supplemental task lighting that is controlled by automatic shutoff.

19. Exit signs.

C405.3.2 Interior lighting power allowance. The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) is determined according to Table C405.3.2(1) using the Building Area Method, or Table C405.3.2(2) using the Space-by-Space Method, for all areas of the building covered in this permit.

C405.3.2.1 Building Area Method. For the Building Area Method, the interior lighting power allowance is the floor area for each building area type listed in Table C405.3.2(1) times the value from Table C405.3.2(1) for that area. For the purposes of this method, an “area” shall be defined as all contiguous spaces that accommodate or are associated with a single building area type, as listed in Table C405.3.2(1). Where this method is used to calculate the total interior lighting power for an entire building, each building area type shall be treated as a separate area.

C405.3.2.2 Space-by-Space Method. For the Space-by-Space Method, the interior lighting power allowance is determined by multiplying the floor area of each space times the value for the space type in Table C405.3.2(2) that most closely represents the proposed use of the space, and then summing the lighting power allowances for all spaces. Tradeoffs among spaces are permitted.

### TABLE C405.3.2(1)

**INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: BUILDING AREA METHOD**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUILDING AREA TYPE</th>
<th>LPD (w/ft²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Automotive facility</td>
<td>0.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convention center</td>
<td>0.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Courthouse</td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dining: bar lounge/leisure</td>
<td>0.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dining: cafeteria/fast food</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dining: family</td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dormitory</td>
<td>0.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise center</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire station</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gymnasium</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health care clinic</td>
<td>0.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital</td>
<td>0.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hotel/Motel</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library</td>
<td>0.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturing facility</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motion picture theater</td>
<td>0.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifamily</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Museum</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office</td>
<td>0.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking garage</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penitentiary</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performing arts theater</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Police station</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post office</td>
<td>0.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religious building</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retail</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School/university</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sports arena</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Town hall</td>
<td>0.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation</td>
<td>0.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warehouse</td>
<td>0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workshop</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Where sleeping units are excluded from lighting power calculations, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the wattage of lighting in the sleeping units is counted.

b. Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.

c. Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section C405.1.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units shall be counted. Where dwelling units are included in the lighting power calculations, only the area served by hardwired lighting shall be included.
## TABLE C405.3.2(2)
### INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES:
#### SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMMON SPACE TYPES*</th>
<th>LPD (watts/sq ft)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Atrium</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less than 40 feet in height</td>
<td>0.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than 40 feet in height</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audience seating area</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In an auditorium</td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a convention center</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a gymnasium</td>
<td>0.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a motion picture theater</td>
<td>0.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a penitentiary</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a performing arts theater</td>
<td>1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a religious building</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a sports arena</td>
<td>0.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise</td>
<td>0.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Banking activity area</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breakroom (See Lounge/breakroom)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Classroom/lecture hall/training room</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a penitentiary</td>
<td>0.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise</td>
<td>0.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Computer room</strong></td>
<td>0.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conference/meeting/multipurpose room</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Confine ment cells</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Copy/print room</strong></td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Corridor</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)</td>
<td>0.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a hospital</td>
<td>0.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a manufacturing facility</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a primary or secondary school (and not used primarily by the staff)</td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise</td>
<td>0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Courtroom</strong></td>
<td>1.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dining area</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In bar/lounge or leisure dining</td>
<td>0.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In cafeteria or fast food dining</td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)</td>
<td>1.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Food preparation area</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Guestroom</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In or as a classroom</td>
<td>1.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise</td>
<td>1.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Laboratory</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Laundry/washing area</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise</td>
<td>0.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loading dock, interior</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lobby</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lounge/breakroom</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Corridor</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Office</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enclosed</td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open plan</td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking area, interior</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmacy area</td>
<td>1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Restroom</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise</td>
<td>0.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sales area</strong></td>
<td>1.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Seating area, general</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stairway (see Space containing stairway)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stairwell</strong></td>
<td>0.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Storage room</strong></td>
<td>0.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vehicular maintenance area</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Workshop</strong></td>
<td>1.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Building Type Specific Space Types</strong>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Automotive (see Vehicular maintenance area)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Convention Center—exhibit space</strong></td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dormitory—living quarters</strong></td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Facility for the visually impaired</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a chapel (and not used primarily by the staff)</td>
<td>0.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a recreation room (and not used primarily by the staff)</td>
<td>1.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Station—sleeping quarters</td>
<td>0.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gymnasium/fitness center</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In an exercise area</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a playing area</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym "ICC" and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
### TABLE C405.3.2(2)—continued
#### INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES:
#### SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building Type Specific Space Types</th>
<th>LPD (watts/sq ft)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Healthcare facility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In an exam/treatment room</td>
<td>1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In an imaging room</td>
<td>0.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a medical supply room</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a nursery</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a nurse’s station</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In an operating room</td>
<td>1.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a patient room</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a physical therapy room</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a recovery room</td>
<td>0.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a reading area</td>
<td>0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the stacks</td>
<td>1.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturing facility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a detailed manufacturing area</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In an equipment room</td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In an extra-high-bay area (greater than 50’ floor-to-ceiling height)</td>
<td>0.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a high-bay area (25-50’ floor-to-ceiling height)</td>
<td>0.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a low-bay area (less than 25’ floor-to-ceiling height)</td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Museum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a general exhibition area</td>
<td>0.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a restoration room</td>
<td>0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performing arts theater—dressing room</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post office—sorting area</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religious buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a fellowship hall</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a worship/pulpit/choir area</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retail facilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a dressing/fitting room</td>
<td>0.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a mall concourse</td>
<td>0.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sports arena—playing area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For a Class I facility</td>
<td>2.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For a Class II facility</td>
<td>1.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For a Class III facility</td>
<td>1.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For a Class IV facility</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation facility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a baggage/carousel area</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In an airport concourse</td>
<td>0.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At a terminal ticket counter</td>
<td>0.62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**a.** In cases where both a common space type and a building area specific space type are listed, the building area specific space type shall apply.

**b.** A “Facility for the Visually Impaired” is a facility that is licensed or will be licensed by local or state authorities for senior long-term care, adult daycare, senior support or people with special visual needs.

**c.** Where sleeping units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section C405.1.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the wattage of lighting in the sleeping units is counted. Where sleeping units are included in the lighting power calculations, only the area served by hardwired lighting shall be included.

**d.** Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section C405.1.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted. Where dwelling units are included in the lighting power calculations, only the area served by hardwired lighting shall be included.

**e.** Class I facilities consist of professional facilities; and semiprofessional, collegiate, or club facilities with seating for 5,000 or more spectators.

**f.** Class II facilities consist of collegiate and semiprofessional facilities with seating for fewer than 5,000 spectators; club facilities with seating for between 2,000 and 5,000 spectators; and amateur league and high-school facilities with seating for more than 2,000 spectators.

**g.** Class III facilities consist of club, amateur league and high-school facilities with seating for 2,000 or fewer spectators.

**h.** Class IV facilities consist of elementary school and recreational facilities; and amateur league and high-school facilities without provision for spectators.
C405.3.2.1 Additional interior lighting power. Where using the Space-by-Space Method, an increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted for specific lighting functions. Additional power shall be permitted only where the specified lighting is installed and automatically controlled separately from the general lighting, to be turned off during nonbusiness hours. This additional power shall be used only for the specified luminaires and shall not be used for any other purpose. An increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted in the following cases:

1. For lighting equipment to be installed in sales areas specifically to highlight merchandise, the additional lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-10.

   Additional interior lighting power allowance =
   \[ 1000 \text{ W} + (\text{Retail Area } 1 \times 0.45 \text{ W/ft}^2) +
   (\text{Retail Area } 2 \times 0.45\text{W/ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area } 3 \times 1.05 \text{ W/ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area } 4 \times 1.87 \text{ W/ft}^2) \]

   For SI units:
   \[ 1000 \text{ W} + (\text{Retail Area } 1 \times 4.8 \text{ W/m}^2) +
   (\text{Retail Area } 2 \times 4.84 \text{W/m}^2) + (\text{Retail Area } 3 \times 11 \text{ W/m}^2) + (\text{Retail Area } 4 \times 20 \text{ W/m}^2) \]

   \[ \text{(Equation 4-10)} \]

   where:
   \[ \text{Retail Area } 1 = \text{The floor area for all products not listed in Retail Area 2, 3 or 4.} \]
   \[ \text{Retail Area } 2 = \text{The floor area used for the sale of vehicles, sporting goods and small electronics.} \]
   \[ \text{Retail Area } 3 = \text{The floor area used for the sale of furniture, clothing, cosmetics and artwork.} \]
   \[ \text{Retail Area } 4 = \text{The floor area used for the sale of jewelry, crystal and china.} \]

   Exception: Other merchandise categories are permitted to be included in Retail Areas 2 through 4, provided that justification documenting the need for additional lighting power based on visual inspection, contrast, or other critical display is approved by the code official.

2. For spaces in which lighting is specified to be installed in addition to the general lighting for the purpose of decorative appearance or for highlighting art or exhibits, provided that the additional lighting power shall be not more than 0.9 W/ft² (9.7 W/m²) in lobbies and not more than 0.75 W/ft² (8.1 W/m²) in other spaces.

C405.4 Lighting for plant growth and maintenance. Not less than 95 percent of the permanently installed luminaires used for plant growth and maintenance shall have a photon efficiency of not less than 1.6 µmol/J, rated in accordance with ANSI/ASABE S640.

C405.5 Exterior lighting power requirements (Mandatory). The total connected exterior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.4.1 shall be not greater than the exterior lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.5.2.

C405.5.1 Total connected exterior building exterior lighting power. The total exterior connected lighting power shall be the total maximum rated wattage of all lighting that is powered through the energy service for the building.

   Exception: Lighting used for the following applications shall not be included.

   1. Lighting approved because of safety considerations.
   2. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal business operation.
   3. Exit signs.
   4. Specialized signal, directional and marker lighting associated with transportation.
   5. A advertising signage or directional signage.
   6. Integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by its manufacturer.
   7. Theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.
   8. Athletic playing areas.
   10. Industrial production, material handling, transportation sites and associated storage areas.
   11. Theme elements in theme/amusement parks.
   12. Used to highlight features of art, public monuments, and the national flag.
   13. Lighting for water features and swimming pools.
   14. Lighting controlled from within dwelling units, where the lighting complies with Section R404.1.

C405.5.2 Exterior lighting power allowance. The total exterior lighting power allowance is the sum of the base site allowance plus the individual allowances for areas that are to be illuminated by lighting that is powered through the energy service for the building. Lighting power allowances are as specified in Table C405.5.2(2). The lighting zone for the building exterior is determined in accordance with Table C405.5.2(1) unless otherwise specified by the code official.
### TABLE C405.5.2(1) EXTERIOR LIGHTING ZONES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LIGHTING ZONE</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Developed areas of national parks, state parks, forest land, and rural areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Areas predominantly consisting of residential zoning, neighborhood business districts, light industrial with limited nighttime use and residential mixed-use areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>All other areas not classified as lighting zone 1, 2 or 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>High-activity commercial districts in major metropolitan areas as designated by the local land use planning authority</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**C405.5.2.1 Additional exterior lighting power.** Any increase in the exterior lighting power allowance is limited to the specific lighting applications indicated in Table C405.5.2(3). The additional power shall be used only for the luminaires that are serving these applications and shall not be used for any other purpose.

**C405.5.3 Gas lighting (Mandatory).** Gas-fired lighting appliances shall not be equipped with continuously burning pilot ignition systems.

**C405.6 Dwelling electrical meter (Mandatory).** Each dwelling unit located in a Group R-2 building shall have a separate electrical meter.

**C405.7 Electrical transformers (Mandatory).** Low-voltage dry-type distribution electric transformers shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Table C405.7 as tested and rated in accordance with the test procedure listed in DOE 10 CFR 431. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the transformer manufacturer.

**Exceptions:*** The following transformers are exempt:

2. Transformers that meet the Energy Policy Act of 2005 exclusions that are not to be used in general purpose applications based on information provided in DOE 10 CFR 431.
3. Transformers that meet the Energy Policy Act of 2005 exclusions with multiple voltage taps where the highest tap is not less than 20 percent more than the lowest tap.
4. Drive transformers.
5. Rectifier transformers.
6. Auto-transformers.
7. Uninterruptible power system transformers.
8. Impedance transformers.
9. Regulating transformers.
10. Sealed and nonventilating transformers.
12. Welding transformers.

**C405.8 Electric motors (Mandatory).** Electric motors shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Tables C405.8(1) through C405.8(4) when tested and rated in accordance with the DOE 10 CFR 431. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the motor manufacturer.

**Exception:** The standards in this section shall not apply to the following exempt electric motors:

1. Air-over electric motors.
2. Component sets of an electric motor.
3. Liquid-cooled electric motors.
4. Submersible electric motors.
5. Inverter-only electric motors.

**C405.9 Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment.** Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment shall comply with this section.

**C405.9.1 Elevator cabs.** For the luminaires in each elevator cab, not including signals and displays, the sum of the lumens divided by the sum of the watts shall be not less than 35 lumens per watt. Ventilation fans in elevators that do not have their own air-conditioning system shall not consume more than 0.33 watts/cfm at the maximum rated speed of the fan. Controls shall be provided that will de-energize ventilation fans and lighting systems when the elevator is stopped, unoccupied and with its doors closed for over 15 minutes.

**C405.9.2 Escalators and moving walks.** Escalators and moving walks shall comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and shall have automatic controls configured to reduce speed to the minimum permitted speed in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 or applicable local code when not conveying passengers.

**Exception:** A variable voltage drive system that reduces operating voltage in response to light loading conditions is an alternative to the reduced speed function.

**C405.9.2.1 Regenerative drive.** An escalator designed either for one-way down operation only or for reversible operation shall have a variable frequency regenerative drive that supplies electrical energy to the building electrical system when the escalator is loaded with passengers whose combined weight exceeds 750 pounds (340 kg).

**C405.10 Voltage drop in feeders and branch circuits.** The total voltage drop across the combination of feeders and branch circuits shall not exceed 5 percent.
### Table C405.5.2(2)

**Lighting Power Allowances for Building Exteriors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lighting Zones</th>
<th>Zone 1</th>
<th>Zone 2</th>
<th>Zone 3</th>
<th>Zone 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Base Site Allowance</strong></td>
<td>350 W</td>
<td>400 W</td>
<td>500 W</td>
<td>900 W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Uncovered Parking Areas</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking areas and drives</td>
<td>0.03 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.04 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.06 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.08 W/ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Building Grounds</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walkways and ramps less than 10 feet wide</td>
<td>0.5 W/linear ft</td>
<td>0.5 W/linear ft</td>
<td>0.6 W/linear ft</td>
<td>0.7 W/linear ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walkways and ramps 10 feet wide or greater, plaza areas, special feature areas</td>
<td>0.10 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.10 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.11 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.14 W/ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dining areas</td>
<td>0.65 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.65 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.75 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.95 W/ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stairways</td>
<td>0.6 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.7 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.7 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.7 W/ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedestrian tunnels</td>
<td>0.12 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.12 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.14 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.21 W/ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landscaping</td>
<td>0.03 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.04 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.04 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.04 W/ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Building Entrances and Exits</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedestrian and vehicular entrances and exits</td>
<td>14 W/linear ft</td>
<td>14 W/linear ft</td>
<td>21 W/linear ft</td>
<td>21 W/linear ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry canopies</td>
<td>0.20 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.25 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.4 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.4 W/ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loading docks</td>
<td>0.35 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.35 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.35 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.35 W/ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sales Canopies</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free-standing and attached</td>
<td>0.40 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.40 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.6 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.7 W/ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Outdoor Sales</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open areas (including vehicle sales lots)</td>
<td>0.20 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.20 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.35 W/ft²</td>
<td>0.50 W/ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Street frontage for vehicle sales lots in addition to &quot;open area&quot; allowance</td>
<td>No allowance</td>
<td>7 W/linear ft</td>
<td>7 W/linear ft</td>
<td>21 W/linear ft</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 watt per square foot = W/0.0929 m². W = watts.

### Table C405.5.2(3)

**Individual Lighting Power Allowances for Building Exteriors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lighting Zones</th>
<th>Zone 1</th>
<th>Zone 2</th>
<th>Zone 3</th>
<th>Zone 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Building façades</td>
<td>No allowance</td>
<td>0.075 W/ft² of gross above-grade wall area</td>
<td>0.113 W/ft² of gross above-grade wall area</td>
<td>0.15 W/ft² of gross above-grade wall area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automated teller machines (ATM) and night depositories</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncovered entrances and gatehouse inspection stations at guarded facilities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.5 W/ft² of area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncovered loading areas for law enforcement, fire, ambulance and other emergency service vehicles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.35 W/ft² of area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive-up windows and doors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking near 24-hour retail entrances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 watt per square foot = W/0.0929 m². W = watts.
### TABLE C405.7
MINIMUM NOMINAL EFFICIENCY LEVELS FOR 10 CFR 431 LOW-VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGLE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS</th>
<th>THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>kVA</strong></td>
<td><strong>Efficiency (%)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>97.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>98.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.5</td>
<td>98.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>98.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>98.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>98.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>167</td>
<td>98.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>98.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333</td>
<td>98.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. kiloVolt-Amp rating.
b. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with the DOE 10 CFR 431 test procedure for low-voltage dry-type transformers.
### Table C405.8(1)

**Minimum Nominal Full-Load Efficiency for NEMA Design A, NEMA Design B, and IEC Design N Motors (Excluding Fire Pump) Electric Motors at 60 Hz**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Motor Horsepower (Standard Kilowatt Equivalent)</th>
<th>Nominal Full-Load Efficiency (%) as of June 1, 2016</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Pole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enclosed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 (0.75)</td>
<td>77.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 (1.1)</td>
<td>84.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (1.5)</td>
<td>85.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (2.2)</td>
<td>86.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (3.7)</td>
<td>88.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5 (5.5)</td>
<td>89.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 (7.5)</td>
<td>90.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 (11)</td>
<td>91.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 (15)</td>
<td>91.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 (18.5)</td>
<td>91.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 (22)</td>
<td>91.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 (30)</td>
<td>92.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 (37)</td>
<td>93.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 (45)</td>
<td>93.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 (55)</td>
<td>93.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 (75)</td>
<td>94.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125 (90)</td>
<td>95.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 (110)</td>
<td>95.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 (150)</td>
<td>95.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250 (186)</td>
<td>95.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300 (224)</td>
<td>95.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350 (261)</td>
<td>95.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400 (298)</td>
<td>95.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450 (336)</td>
<td>95.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 (373)</td>
<td>95.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**a.** Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

**b.** For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:

1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula: 1 kilowatt = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with No. 1 or No. 2 above, as applicable.
# Table C405.8(2)

**Minimum Nominal Full-Load Efficiency for NEMA Design C and IEC Design H Motors at 60 Hz**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Motor Horsepower (Standard Kilowatt Equivalent)</th>
<th>Nominal Full-Load Efficiency (%) as of June 1, 2016</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 Pole Enclosed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 (0.75)</td>
<td>85.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 (1.1)</td>
<td>86.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (1.5)</td>
<td>86.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (2.2)</td>
<td>89.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (3.7)</td>
<td>89.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5 (5.5)</td>
<td>91.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 (7.5)</td>
<td>91.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 (11)</td>
<td>92.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 (15)</td>
<td>93.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 (18.5)</td>
<td>93.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 (22)</td>
<td>93.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 (30)</td>
<td>94.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 (37)</td>
<td>94.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 (45)</td>
<td>95.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 (55)</td>
<td>95.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 (75)</td>
<td>95.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125 (90)</td>
<td>95.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 (110)</td>
<td>95.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 (150)</td>
<td>96.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.
- For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:
  1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
  2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
  3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula: 1 kilowatt = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with No. 1 or No. 2 above, as applicable.

# Table C405.8(3)

**Minimum Average Full-Load Efficiency Polyphase Small Electric Motors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Motor Horsepower</th>
<th>OPEN MOTORS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Synchronous Speed (RPM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>65.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>69.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>73.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>76.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>77.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>84.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>85.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>85.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Average full-load efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.
C 405.11 Electric vehicle (EV) charging for new construction. The building shall be provided with electric vehicle (EV) charging in accordance with this section and the National Electrical Code (NFPA 70). Where parking spaces are added or modified without an increase in building size, only the new parking spaces are subject to this requirement. The number of parking spaces can be determined by actual spaces provided or consistent with Boulder's Municipal Code, Title 9: Land Use Code, Chapter 9: Development Standards, 9-9-6: Parking Standards.

C 405.11.1 Group R occupancies. Group R occupancies with three or more dwelling units and/or sleeping units shall be provided with EV charging in accordance with Table C405.11.1. Calculations for the number of spaces shall be rounded up to the nearest whole number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBER OF EV READY SPACES/DWELLING UNIT</th>
<th>NUMBER OF EV CAPABLE SPACES</th>
<th>NUMBER OF EVSE INSTALLED SPACES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-25 spaces</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 25 spaces</td>
<td>10% of spaces</td>
<td>40% of remaining spaces</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C 405.11.2 Group A, B, E, I, M and S-2 occupancies. Group A, B, E, I, M and open or enclosed parking garages under S-2 occupancy shall be provided with electric vehicle charging in accordance with Table C405.11.2. Calculations for the number of spaces shall be rounded up to the nearest whole number.

C 405.11.3 Identification. Construction documents shall designate all EV capable spaces, EV ready spaces and EVSE installed spaces and indicate the locations of conduit and termination points serving them. The circuits or spaces reserved for the circuits for EV capable spaces, EV ready spaces and EVSE installed spaces shall be clearly identified in the panel or subpanel directory. The conduit for EV capable spaces shall be clearly identified at both the panel or subpanel and the termination point at the parking space.

C 405.11.4 Accessible parking. Where new EVSE installed spaces and/or new EV ready spaces and new accessible parking, as defined by the City of Boulder Building Code, Chapter 11, are both provided, parking facilities shall be designed so that at least one accessible parking space shall be EV ready or EVSE installed.

SECTION C406
SOLAR READINESS

C 406.1 General (Mandatory). All newly constructed commercial buildings shall comply with the requirements of Sections C406.2 through C406.5.

C 406.2 Solar zone. Solar zones shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents.

C 406.2.1 Location and size of solar zone. The solar zone shall have a minimum total area described as follows. The
C 406.3 Interconnection pathways. The construction documents shall indicate a location for inverters and metering equipment and a pathway for routing of conduit from the solar zone to the point of interconnection with the electrical service.

C 406.4 Documentation. A copy of the construction documents or a comparable document indicating the information from Sections C406.2 and C406.3 shall be provided to and maintained by the building owner. The building owner shall provide a copy of the construction documents or a comparable document indicating the information from Sections C406.2 and C406.3 to any purchasers and subsequent owners of the building or any part thereof.

C 406.5 Main electrical service panel.

1. The main electrical service panel shall have a minimum bus bar rating of not less than 200 amps.

2. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow for the installation of double pole circuit breakers for a future solar electric installation. The minimum reserved amperage shall be determined from Table C406.5.

   2.1. Location. The reserved space shall be positioned at the opposite (load) end from the input feeder location or main circuit location.

   2.2. Marking. The reserved spaces shall be permanently marked as “For Future Solar Electric.”

   **TABLE C406.5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INVERTER SYSTEM VOLTAGE</th>
<th>AMPERAGE PER SQUARE FOOT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>0.125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240</td>
<td>0.063</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208</td>
<td>0.042</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>277</td>
<td>0.054</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480</td>
<td>0.018</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECTION C407

**TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE**

C 407.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using total building performance. Compliance with this section requires the use of ASHRAE Standard 90.1-2016 Appendix G, with modifications. Required modifications to this standard are summarized in this section. All end use load components within and associated with the building shall be modeled.

**Exception:** Energy used to recharge or refuel vehicles that are used for on-road and off-site transportation purposes shall be excluded from compliance modeling. Energy supplied to vehicle charging equipment shall be submetered per section C407.6.

1. A complete list of Boulder required modifications to the Appendix G protocol can be found on the City of Boulder Energy Conservation Code website in the document “Boulder Modified Appendix G Protocol.”
C 407.2 Mandatory requirements. Compliance with this section requires compliance with all mandatory requirements of this chapter.

C 407.3 Performance-based compliance. Compliance based on building performance shall be determined in accordance with C 407.3.1, C 407.3.2 or C 407.3.3. Energy use for the proposed design shall be reported to the code official as energy use intensity (EUI) in kBtu/sf/yr.

C 407.3.1 Modeled baseline. Projects shall comply with Section 4.2.1.1 of ASHRAE Standard 90.1-2016, as modified in Section C 407.4.

C 407.3.2 Fixed performance target. Projects of the types listed in Table C 407.3.2 may use the EUI targets identified in the table. The proposed building model predicted performance will be demonstrated using the energy modeling procedures for the proposed building performance in Appendix G of ASHRAE 90.1-2016, as modified in Section C 407.4. Buildings with multiple occupancy types listed in Table C 407.3.2 shall develop a performance target based on a weighted-average EUI calculated by floor area of each occupancy type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE C 407.3.2 FIXED EUI TARGETS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BUILDING TYPE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium office (5,000–50,000 sf)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid-rise apartment (Type R2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small office (&lt; 5000 sf)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warehouse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C 407.3.3 Measured performance outcome. With approval of the building official, projects may demonstrate compliance with this code by documenting that the building has achieved the EUI performance calculated per C 407.3.1 or C 407.3.2 based on metered energy use after occupancy.

C 407.3.3.1 Excluded energy use. Energy used for data centers and EV charging equipment may be excluded from the total EUI of the building, provided that this energy use is separately metered per the requirements of Section C 407.6.

C 407.3.3.2 Demonstration of operating energy use. Metered energy data shall be reported to the building official using Energy Star Portfolio Manager, and adjusted for the percentage of floor area occupied. While at least 75 percent occupied, the building shall operate at or below its assigned energy use target established in Section C 407.3.2 for any recording period of 12 consecutive months that is completed within three years of the date of the Certificate of Occupancy. The owner shall notify the building official when this 12-month period has been successfully completed.

C 407.3.3.3 Adjustments to energy targets. The building official may approve adjustments to building EUI targets based on unanticipated changes to building operation and conditions. Adjustments to targets must be approved by the building official based on specific documentation of the need for adjustment. The following conditions can be considered as the basis for adjustments to EUI targets:

1. Adjustment for change in occupancy. When the occupancy of the building or a portion of the building changes from that assumed in the permit submittal, the assigned energy performance target shall be adjusted to reflect the new occupancy. If the new occupancy is not listed in Section C 407.3.2, either the building official shall assign it an energy use target based on the best-performing local examples of that occupancy type, or a metering system shall be provided that excludes the energy loads for the additional occupancy.

2. Adjustment for unusually cold years. If the heating degree days (HDD) recorded by the National Weather Service for the Denver International Airport exceeds the average HDD value identified in local TMY3 data for the 12-month demonstration period, the assigned energy performance target is permitted to be increased by 1 percent for each 4-percent increase of HDD from average HDD for that period.

3. Adjustment for other factors. Adjustments for conditions other than those identified in this section that represent reasonable and unanticipated changes to building use characteristics may be considered as a basis for target adjustment on a case-by-case basis by the building official.

C 407.3.3.4 Financial security. The applicant shall provide a financial security to be used if the building fails to achieve an operating energy use lower than the building’s energy use target according to Section C 407.3.2. The financial security shall be submitted to and approved by the code official prior to issuance of the building permit. The financial security requirement shall be fulfilled by an escrow of funds with the city for an amount equal to $2.00 per square foot of gross floor area. If the owner provides evidence that the building has operated at or below its target energy performance level, as provided in Section C 407.3.3.2, the financial security provided by the applicant shall be returned to the applicant and the applicant will have no further obligations under this section.

C 407.3.3.5 Procedure for noncompliance. If the owner fails to provide evidence that the building has operated as required under Section C 407.3.3.2, the building official shall require the applicant to draw down on the financial security of Section C 407.3.3.4 to lower the operating energy use of the building, including recommissioning, repairs and improvements to the existing energy-consuming systems, or provision of additional energy efficiency measures to reduce the building’s energy use. Such expenditures shall be approved in advance by the building official, and the
work shall be fully completed within one year of the date when a financial security has been drawn down.

C 407.4 Modifications to Appendix G. Compliance with this section requires the use of ASHRAE Standard 90.1-2016 Appendix G, with specific modifications adopted by the City of Boulder. A complete list of these modifications can be found in the document: "Boulder Modified Appendix G Protocol." Required modifications to the Appendix G protocol include the following:

C 407.4.1 Building performance requirement. The PCI target (PCI(t)) shall be calculated in accordance with Section 4.2.1.1 of ASHRAE 90.1-2016 with the following modifications:

1. The required PCI(t) shall be reduced by 25 percent for mixed-fuel buildings and 20 percent for all-electric buildings.
2. The building performance factors in Table 4.2.1. of Standard 90.1 shall be replaced by those listed in Table C407.4.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUILDING AREA TYPE</th>
<th>CLIMATE ZONE SB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Office</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retail</td>
<td>0.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School</td>
<td>0.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Healthcare</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restaurant</td>
<td>0.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hotel</td>
<td>0.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warehouse</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apartment</td>
<td>0.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All others</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C 407.4.2 Performance backstop. All elements of the building envelope and HVAC system must meet the prescriptive requirements of ASHRAE Standard 90.1-2016, Sections 5.5 and 6.8. No individual component tradeoffs below these prescriptive requirements will be allowed in the proposed building performance model. Exceptions to the 40 percent window-to-wall area ratio can be made provided that the project can still meet the required building energy performance requirements of Section C401.

C 407.4.3 Fixed schedules. All projects using the performance pathway must use the mandatory building schedules and equipment power density schedules provided in the "Boulder Modified Appendix G Protocol" for both the baseline and proposed building model. Mandatory schedules are available on the City of Boulder Energy Conservation Code website.

Exceptions:

1. The code official may approve alternate schedules prior to submittal to account for special use conditions.
2. The code official may approve alternate schedules for unregulated loads in the proposed building design that reflect plug and process load management strategies.

C 407.4.4 Appendix G mandatory requirements. The following mandatory sections of Appendix G are superseded by the mandatory requirements listed in Section C407.2: Sections 5.4, 6.4, 7.4, 8.4, 9.4 and 10.4.

C 407.5 Solar requirements. On-site renewable energy generated by a system installed as part of this project that is used by the building shall be subtracted from the proposed design energy consumption prior to calculating the proposed building performance.

C 407.5.1 Minimum installed solar capacity. All projects using the performance pathway must install an on-site renewable energy system sized to meet at least 5 percent of annual proposed design energy consumption.

C 407.5.2 Solar readiness. All projects must also meet the requirements of Section C406, Solar Readiness.

C 407.6 Energy monitoring. All projects must install submetering or monitoring capabilities to support building energy performance analysis. The project must include capabilities to store and access a 24-month continuous data set on an ongoing basis.

C 407.6.1 Individual fuel sources. All fuel sources serving the building must be separately metered. Individual meters used to comply with this section may not serve multiple buildings.

C 407.6.2 On-site renewable energy production. Energy production from on-site renewable energy systems must be independently metered.

C 407.6.3 End-use metering. Measurement devices shall be installed in new buildings to monitor the electric energy use of each of the following separately:

1. Total electric energy.
2. HVAC systems energy use.
3. Interior lighting.
4. Exterior lighting.
5. Receptacle circuits.
6. Data centers representing over 10 percent of total building load or 5 percent of building floor area.
7. Other process loads that represent 10 percent or more of total building energy use based on building energy use modeling.

C 407.6.4 Electric vehicle (EV) supply equipment. EV supply equipment must be metered independently from other building loads.

C 407.6.5 Tenant metering. For buildings with tenants, individual tenant energy loads shall be capable of being separately monitored.

C 407.7 Performance feedback. Projects using the performance path are required to submit an analysis comparing design modeling to actual energy use for a consecutive 12-month period within two years of project occupancy. This analysis should use billing data and submetered data from the building to identify the accuracy of the energy model and any areas of performance divergence from predicted energy use.
All projects are required to provide a narrative summary describing areas of alignment and misalignment of predictive modeling with actual energy use patterns, including modeled EUI and metered EUI. This effort may be designed to support an ongoing commissioning or retro-commissioning process required in Section 408.

SECTION C408
MAINTENANCE INFORMATION AND SYSTEM COMMISSIONING

C 408.1 General. This section covers the provision of maintenance information and the commissioning of, and the functional testing requirements for, building systems.

C 408.1.1 Building operations and maintenance information. The building operations and maintenance documents shall be provided to the owner and shall consist of manufacturers’ information, specifications and recommendations; programming procedures and data points; narratives; and other means of illustrating to the owner how the building, equipment and systems are intended to be installed, maintained and operated. Required regular maintenance actions for equipment and systems shall be clearly stated on a readily visible label. The label shall include the title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.

C 408.1.2 Energy use monitoring plan. As part of the operations manual, the project must provide a written description of what metered data is collected, how metering data is collected and stored, and how the data can be accessed for project analysis by the building operator.

C 408.2 Mechanical systems and service water-heating systems commissioning and completion requirements. Prior to the final mechanical and plumbing inspections, the registered design professional or approved agency shall provide evidence of mechanical systems commissioning and completion in accordance with the provisions of this section.

Construction document notes shall clearly indicate provisions for commissioning and completion requirements in accordance with this section and are permitted to refer to specifications for further requirements. Copies of all documentation shall be given to the owner or owner’s authorized agent and made available to the code official upon request in accordance with Sections C408.2.4 and C408.2.5.

Exceptions: The following systems are exempt:

1. Mechanical systems and service water heater systems in buildings where the total mechanical equipment capacity is less than 480,000 Btu/h (140.7 kW) cooling capacity and 600,000 Btu/h (175.8 kW) combined service water-heating and space-heating capacity.

2. Systems included in Section C 403.5 that serve individual dwelling units and sleeping units.

C 408.2.1 Commissioning plan. A commissioning plan shall be developed by a registered design professional or approved agency and shall include the following items:

1. A narrative description of the activities that will be accomplished during each phase of commissioning, including the personnel intended to accomplish each of the activities.

2. A listing of the specific equipment, appliances or systems to be tested and a description of the tests to be performed.

3. Functions to be tested including, but not limited to, calibrations and economizer controls.

4. Conditions under which the test will be performed. Testing shall affirm winter and summer design conditions and full outside air conditions.

5. Measurable criteria for performance.

C 408.2.2 Systems adjusting and balancing. HVAC systems shall be balanced in accordance with generally accepted engineering standards. Air and water flow rates shall be measured and adjusted to deliver final flow rates within the tolerances provided in the product specifications. Test and balance activities shall include air system and hydronic system balancing.

C 408.2.2.1 Air systems balancing. Each supply air outlet and zone terminal device shall be equipped with means for air balancing in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 6 of the International Mechanical Code. Discharge dampers used for air-system balancing are prohibited on constant-volume fans and variable-volume fans with motors 10 hp (18.6 kW) and larger. Air systems shall be balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses then, for fans with system power of greater than 1 hp (0.746 kW), fan speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions.

Exception: Fans with fan motors of 1 hp (0.74 kW) or less are not required to be provided with a means for air balancing.

C 408.2.2.2 Hydronic systems balancing. Individual hydronic heating and cooling coils shall be equipped with means for balancing and measuring flow. Hydronic systems shall be proportionately balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses, then the pump impeller shall be trimmed or pump speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions. Each hydronic system shall have either the capability to measure pressure across the pump, or test ports at each side of each pump.

Exception: The following equipment is not required to be equipped with a means for balancing or measuring flow:

1. Pumps with pump motors of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less.

2. Where throttling results in not greater than 5 percent of the nameplate horsepower draw above that required if the impeller were trimmed.

C 408.2.3 Functional performance testing. Functional performance testing specified in Sections C 408.2.3.1 through C408.2.3.3 shall be conducted.

C 408.2.3.1 Equipment. Equipment functional performance testing shall demonstrate the installation and operation of components, systems, and system-to-sys-
system interfacing relationships in accordance with approved plans and specifications such that operation, function, and maintenance serviceability for each of the commissioned systems is confirmed. Testing shall include all modes and sequence of operation, including under full-load, part-load and the following emergency conditions:

1. All modes as described in the sequence of operation.
2. Redundant or automatic back-up mode.
4. Mode of operation upon a loss of power and restoration of power.

Exception: Unitary or packaged HVAC equipment listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(3) that do not require supply air economizers.

C408.2.3.2 Controls. HVAC and service water-heating control systems shall be tested to document that control devices, components, equipment and systems are calibrated and adjusted and operate in accordance with approved plans and specifications. Sequences of operation shall be functionally tested to document they operate in accordance with approved plans and specifications.

C408.2.3.3 Economizers. Air economizers shall undergo a functional test to determine that they operate in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.

C408.2.4 Preliminary commissioning report. A preliminary report of commissioning test procedures and results shall be completed and certified by the registered design professional or approved agency and provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical system and service hot water findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall be identified as "Preliminary Commissioning Report," shall include the completed Commissioning Compliance Checklist, Figure C408.2.4, and shall identify:

1. Itemization of deficiencies found during testing required by this section that have not been corrected at the time of report preparation.
2. Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation because of climatic conditions.
3. Climatic conditions required for performance of the deferred tests.
4. Results of functional performance tests.
5. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process, including measurable criteria for test acceptance.

C408.2.4.1 Acceptance of report. Buildings, or portions thereof, shall not be considered as acceptable for a final inspection pursuant to Section C105.2.6 until the code official has received the Preliminary Commissioning Report from the building owner or owner's authorized agent.

C408.2.4.2 Copy of report. The code official shall be permitted to require that a copy of the Preliminary Commissioning Report be made available for review by the code official.

C408.2.5 Documentation requirements. The construction documents shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the certificate of occupancy.

C408.2.5.1 System balancing report. A written report describing the activities and measurements completed in accordance with Section C408.2.2.

C408.2.5.2 Final commissioning report. A report of test procedures and results identified as “Final Commissioning Report” shall be delivered to the building owner or owner’s authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical system and service hot water system findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall include the following:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.
3. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process including measurable criteria for test acceptance, provided herein for repeatability.

Exception: Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation due to climatic conditions.

C408.3 Functional testing of lighting controls. Automatic lighting controls required by this code shall comply with this section.

C408.3.1 Functional testing. Prior to passing final inspection, the registered design professional shall provide evidence that the lighting control systems have been tested to ensure that control hardware and software are calibrated, adjusted, programmed and in proper working condition in accordance with the construction documents and manufacturer's instructions. Functional testing shall be in accordance with Sections C408.3.1.1 through C408.3.1.3 for the applicable control type.

C408.3.1.1 Occupant sensor controls. Where occupant sensor controls are provided, the following procedures shall be performed:

1. Certify that the occupant sensor has been located and aimed in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.
2. For projects with seven or fewer occupant sensors, each sensor shall be tested.
3. For projects with more than seven occupant sensors, testing shall be done for each unique combination of sensor type and space geometry. Where multiples of each unique combination of sensor type and space geometry are provided, not less than 10 percent and in no case fewer than one, of
each combination shall be tested unless the code official or design professional requires a higher percentage to be tested. Where 30 percent or more of the tested controls fail, all remaining identical combinations shall be tested.

For occupant sensor controls to be tested, verify the following:

3.1. Where occupant sensor controls include status indicators, verify correct operation.
3.2. The controlled lights turn off or down to the permitted level within the required time.
3.3. For auto-on occupant sensor controls, the lights turn on to the permitted level when an occupant enters the space.
3.4. For manual-on occupant sensor controls, the lights turn on only when manually activated.
3.5. The lights are not incorrectly turned on by movement in adjacent areas or by HVAC operation.

**C408.3.1.2 Time-switch controls.** Where time-switch controls are provided, the following procedures shall be performed:

1. Confirm that the time-switch control is programmed with accurate weekday, weekend and holiday schedules.
2. Provide documentation to the owner of time-switch controls programming including weekday, weekend, holiday schedules, and set-up and preference program settings.
3. Verify the correct time and date in the time switch.
4. Verify that any battery back-up is installed and energized.
5. Verify that the override time limit is set to not more than 2 hours.
6. Simulate occupied condition. Verify and document the following:
   6.1. All lights can be turned on and off by their respective area control switch.
   6.2. The switch only operates lighting in the enclosed space in which the switch is located.
7. Simulate unoccupied condition. Verify and document the following:
   7.1. Nonexempt lighting turns off.
   7.2. Manual override switch allows only the lights in the enclosed space where the override switch is located to turn on or remain on until the next scheduled shutoff occurs.
8. Additional testing as specified by the registered design professional.

**C408.3.1.3 Daylight responsive controls.** Where daylight responsive controls are provided, the following shall be verified:

1. Control devices have been properly located, field calibrated and set for accurate setpoints and threshold light levels.
2. Daylight controlled lighting loads adjust to light level setpoints in response to available daylight.
3. The calibration adjustment equipment is located for ready access only by authorized personnel.

**C408.3.2 Documentation requirements.** The construction documents shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner’s authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the certificate of occupancy.

**C408.3.2.1 Drawings.** Construction documents shall include the location and catalogue number of each piece of equipment.

**C408.3.2.2 Manuals.** An operating and maintenance manual shall be provided and include the following:

1. Name and address of not less than one service agency for installed equipment.
2. A narrative of how each system is intended to operate, including recommended setpoints.
3. Submittal data indicating all selected options for each piece of lighting equipment and lighting controls.
4. Operation and maintenance manuals for each piece of lighting equipment. Required routine maintenance actions, cleaning and recommended relamping shall be clearly identified.
5. A schedule for inspecting and recalibrating all lighting controls.

**C408.3.2.3 Report.** A report of test results shall be provided and include the following:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.
Project Information: _____________________________ Project Name: ________________________________

Project Address: __________________________________________________________________________

Commissioning Authority: __________________________________________________________________

Commissioning Plan (Section C408.2.1)

☐ Commissioning Plan was used during construction and includes all items required by Section C408.2.1

☐ Systems Adjusting and Balancing has been completed.

☐ HVAC Equipment Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: ___________________________

☐ HVAC Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: ___________________________

☐ Economizer Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: ___________________________

☐ Lighting Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: ___________________________

☐ Service Water-Heating System Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: ___________________________

☐ Manual, record documents and training have been completed or scheduled

☐ Preliminary Commissioning Report submitted to owner and includes all items required by Section C408.2.4

I hereby certify that the commissioning provider has provided me with evidence of mechanical, service water heating and lighting systems commissioning in accordance with the 2018 IECC.

Signature of Building Owner or Owner’s Representative ___________________________ Date ____________

FIGURE C408.2.4
COMMISSIONING COMPLIANCE CHECKLIST

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym “ICC” and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
CHAPTER 5 [CE]
EXISTING BUILDINGS

User note:

About this chapter: Many buildings are renovated or altered in numerous ways that could affect the energy use of the building as a whole. Chapter 5 requires the application of certain parts of Chapter 4 in order to maintain, if not improve, the conservation of energy by the renovated or altered building.

SECTION C501
GENERAL

C 501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the alteration, repair, addition and change of occupancy of existing buildings and structures.

C 501.2 Existing buildings. Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, alteration or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing building or building system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code.

C 501.3 Maintenance. Buildings and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices and systems required by this code shall be maintained in conformance to the code edition under which they were installed. The owner or the owner’s authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of buildings and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of energy conservation, fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.


C 501.5 New and replacement materials. Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for repairs, provided that hazards to life, health or property are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not allow use of these materials in buildings of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

C 501.6 Historic buildings. Provisions of this code relating to the construction, repair, alteration, restoration and movement of structures, and change of occupancy shall not be mandatory for historic buildings provided that a report has been submitted to the code official and signed by a registered design professional, or a representative of the State Historic Preservation Office or the historic preservation authority having jurisdiction, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the building.

SECTION C502
ADDITIONS

C 502.1 General. Additions to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction. Additions shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing building systems. An addition shall be deemed to comply with this code if the addition alone complies or if the existing building and addition comply with this code as a single building.

1. New additions with a construction valuation of $500,000 or more shall comply with Section C407.
2. New buildings and additions with a construction valuation less than $500,000 shall comply with Section C502.2.

C 502.2 Prescriptive compliance. Additions shall comply with Sections C502.2.1 through C502.2.6.

C 502.2.1 Vertical fenestration. New vertical fenestration area that results in a total building fenestration area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.5, C402.4.3 or C407. Additions with vertical fenestration that result in a total building fenestration area greater than Section C404.1.5 and additions that exceed the fenestration area that result in a total building fenestration area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.1 for the addition only. Additions that result in a total building vertical fenestration area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.1 or C407.

C 502.2.2 Skylight area. New skylight area that results in a total building fenestration area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407. Additions with skylight area that result in a total building skylight area greater than C402.4.1 or additions that exceed the skylight area shall comply with Section C402.4.1.2 for the addition only. Additions that result in a total building skylight area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.2 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407.

C 502.2.3 Building mechanical systems. New mechanical systems and equipment that are part of the addition and
EXISTING BUILDINGS

serve the building heating, cooling and ventilation needs shall comply with Section C403.

C 502.2.3.1 Mechanical systems acceptance testing. New mechanical systems that serve additions shall comply with Sections C408.2.2, C408.2.3 and C408.2.5.

Exceptions:
1. Mechanical systems and service water-heating systems in buildings where the total mechanical equipment capacity is less than 480,000 Btu/h (140.7 kW) cooling capacity and 600,000 Btu/h (175.8 kW) combined service water-heating and space-heating capacity.
2. Systems included in Section C403.5 that serve individual dwelling units and sleeping units.

C 502.2.4 Service water-heating systems. New service water-heating equipment, controls and service water-heating piping shall comply with Section C404.

C 502.2.4.1 Service hot water systems acceptance testing. New service hot water systems that serve additions shall comply with Sections C408.2.3 and C408.2.5.

Exceptions:
1. Service water-heating systems in buildings where the total mechanical equipment capacity is less than 600,000 Btu/h (175.8 kW) combined service water-heating and space-heating capacity.
2. Systems included in Section C403.5 that serve individual dwelling units and sleeping units.

C 502.2.5 Pools and inground permanently installed spas. New pools and inground permanently installed spas shall comply with Section C404.10.

C 502.2.6 Lighting power and systems. New lighting systems that are installed as part of the addition shall comply with Section C405.

C 502.2.6.1 Interior lighting power. The total interior lighting power for the addition shall comply with Section C405.3.2 for the addition alone, or the existing building and the addition shall comply as a single building.

C 502.2.6.2 Exterior lighting power. The total exterior lighting power for the addition shall comply with Section C405.4.2 for the addition alone, or the existing building and the addition shall comply as a single building.

C 502.2.6.3 Lighting acceptance testing. New lighting systems that serve additions shall comply with Section C408.3.

SECTION C503 ALTERATIONS

C 503.1 General. Alterations to any building or structure shall comply with the requirements of Section C503 and the code for new construction. Alterations shall be such that the existing building or structure is not less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing building or structure was prior to the alteration. Alterations to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction. Alterations shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing building systems. Level 3 alterations shall also comply with Section C503.7. Level 4 alterations shall also comply with Section C503.8.

Exception: The following alterations need not comply with the requirements for new construction, provided that the energy use of the building is not increased:
1. Storm windows installed over existing fenestration.
2. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single-pane fenestration assemblies reducing solar heat gain, provided that the code does not require the glazing or fenestration to be replaced.
3. Existing ceiling, wall or floor cavities exposed during construction, provided that these cavities are filled with insulation.
4. Construction where the existing roof, wall or floor cavity is not exposed.
5. Roof recover.
6. Air barriers shall not be required for roof recover and roof replacement where the alterations or renovations to the building do not include alterations, renovations or repairs to the remainder of the building envelope.

C 503.2 Change in space conditioning. Any nonconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become conditioned space shall be required to be brought into full compliance with this code.

Exceptions:
1. Where the component performance alternative in Section C402.1.5 is used to comply with this section, the proposed UA shall be not greater than 110 percent of the target UA.
2. Where the total building performance option in Section C407 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the proposed design shall be not greater than 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise permitted by Section C407.3.

C 503.3 Building envelope. New building envelope assemblies that are part of the alteration shall comply with Sections C402.1 through C402.5.

Exception: Where the existing building exceeds the fenestration area limitations of Section C402.4.1 prior to alteration, the building is exempt from Section C402.4.1 provided that there is not an increase in fenestration area.

C 503.3.1 Roof replacement. Roof replacements shall comply with Section C402.1.3, C402.1.4, C402.1.5 or C407 where the existing roof assembly is part of the building thermal envelope and contains insulation entirely above the roof deck.

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym “ICC” and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
**C503.3.2 Vertical fenestration.** The addition of vertical fenestration that results in a total building fenestration area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4.3 or C407. The addition of vertical fenestration that results in a total building fenestration area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.1 for the space adjacent to the new fenestration only. Alterations that result in a total building vertical fenestration area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407. Provided that the vertical fenestration area is not changed, using the same vertical fenestration area in the standard reference design as the building prior to alteration shall be an alternative to using the vertical fenestration area specified in Table C407.5.1(1).

**C503.3.3 Skylight area.** New skylight area that results in a total building skylight area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4 or C407. The addition of skylight area that results in a total building skylight area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.2 for the space adjacent to the new skylights. Alterations that result in a total building skylight area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.2 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407. Provided that the skylight area is not changed, using the same skylight area in the standard reference design as the building prior to alteration shall be an alternative to using the skylight area specified in Table C407.5.1(1).

**C503.4 Heating and cooling systems.** New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Sections C403.

**C503.4.1 Economizers.** New cooling systems that are part of alteration shall comply with Section C403.5.

**C503.4.2 Mechanical system acceptance testing.** New mechanical systems that serve alterations shall comply with Sections C408.2.2, C408.2.3 and C408.2.5.

**Exceptions:**
1. Mechanical systems and service water-heating systems in buildings where the total mechanical equipment capacity is less than 480,000 Btu/h (140.7 kW) cooling capacity and 600,000 Btu/h (175.8 kW) combined service water-heating and space-heating capacity.
2. Systems included in Section C403.5 that serve individual dwelling units and sleeping units.

**C503.5 Service hot water systems.** New service hot water systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section C404.

**C503.5.1 Service hot water system acceptance testing.** New service hot water systems that serve alterations shall comply with Sections C408.2.3 and C408.2.5.

**Exceptions:**
1. Service water-heating systems in buildings where the total mechanical equipment capacity is less than 600,000 Btu/h (175.8 kW) combined service water-heating and space-heating capacity.
2. Systems included in Section C403.5 that serve individual dwelling units and sleeping units.

**C503.6 Lighting systems.** New lighting systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section C405.

**Exception.** Alterations that replace less than 10 percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such alterations do not increase the installed interior lighting power.

**C503.6.1 Lighting acceptance testing.** New lighting systems that serve alterations shall comply with Section C408.3.

**C503.7 Level 3 alterations.** Level 3 alterations shall also comply with Section C407.3 where the proposed design EUI or PCI shall be not greater than 125 percent of the EUI or PCI otherwise permitted by Section C407.3.

**C503.8 Level 4 alterations.** Level 4 alterations shall also comply with Section C407.3 where the proposed design EUI or PCI shall be not greater than 110 percent of the EUI or PCI otherwise permitted by Section C407.3.

**SECTION C504 REPAIRS**

**C504.1 General.** Buildings and structures, and parts thereof, shall be repaired in compliance with Section C501.3 and this section. Work on nondamaged components that is necessary for the required repair of damaged components shall be considered to be part of the repair and shall not be subject to the requirements for alterations in this chapter. Routine maintenance required by Section C501.3, ordinary repairs exempt from permit and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for repairs in this section.

Where a building was constructed to comply with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, repairs shall comply with the standard and need not comply with Sections C402, C403, C404 and C405.

**C504.2 Application.** For the purposes of this code, the following shall be considered to be repairs:
1. Glass-only replacements in an existing sash and frame.
2. Roof repairs.
3. Air barriers shall not be required for roof repair where the repairs to the building do not include alterations, renovations or repairs to the remainder of the building envelope.
4. Replacement of existing doors that separate conditioned space from the exterior shall not require the installation of a vestibule or revolving door, provided that an existing vestibule that separates a conditioned space from the exterior shall not be removed.
5. Repairs where only the bulb, the ballast or both within the existing luminaires in a space are replaced, provided that the replacement does not increase the installed interior lighting power.
SECTION C505
CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

C505.1 General. Spaces undergoing a change in occupancy that would result in an increase in demand for either fossil fuel or electrical energy shall comply with this code. Where the use in a space changes from one use in Table C405.3.2(1) or C405.3.2(2) to another use in Table C405.3.2(1) or C405.3.2(2), the installed lighting wattage shall comply with Section C405.3. Where the space undergoing a change in occupancy or use is in a building with a fenestration area that exceeds the limitations of Section C402.4.1, the space is exempt from Section C402.4.1 provided that there is not an increase in fenestration area.

Exceptions:

1. Where the component performance alternative in Section C402.1.5 is used to comply with this section, the proposed UA shall be not greater than 110 percent of the target UA.

2. Where performance-based compliance in Section C407 is required to comply with this section, the proposed design EUI or PCI shall be not greater than 110 percent of the EUI or PCI otherwise permitted by Section C407.3.
CHAPTER 6 [CE]
REFERENCED STANDARDS

User note:

About this chapter: Chapter 6 lists the full title, edition year and address of the promulgator for all standards that are referenced in the code. The section numbers in which the standards are referenced are also listed.

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 107.

AAMA
American Architectural Manufacturers Association
1827 Walden Office Square
Suite 550
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268

Table C402.5.2

AHAM
Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers
1111 19th Street NW, Suite 402
Washington, DC 20036

ANSI/AHAM RAC-1—2008: Room Air Conditioners
Table C403.3.2(3)

AHAM HRF-1—2016: Energy, Performance and Capacity of Household Refrigerators, Refrigerator-Freezers and Freezers
Table C403.10.1

AHRI
Air-Conditioning, Heating, & Refrigeration Institute
2111 Wilson Blvd, Suite 500
Arlington, VA 22201

Table C403.3.2(2)

Table C403.3.2(2)

Table C403.3.2(3)

Table C403.3.2(3)

Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(2)

365(I-P)—2009: Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-conditioning Condensing Units
Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(6)

390 (I-P)—2015: Performance Rating of Single Package Vertical Air-conditioners and Heat Pumps
Table C403.3.2(3)

400 (I-P)—2015: Performance Rating of Liquid to Liquid Heat Exchangers
Table C403.3.2(10)

440—2008: Performance Rating of Room Fan Coils— with Addendum 1
Table C403.11.3

460—2005: Performance Rating of Remote Mechanical-draft Air-cooled Refrigerant Condensers
Table C403.3.2(8)
REFERENCED STANDARDS

AHRI—continued

550/590 (I-P) — 2015: Performance Rating of Water-chilling and Heat Pump Water-heating Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle
C403.3.2.1, Table C403.3.2(7)

560—00: Absorption Water Chilling and Water Heating Packages
Table C403.3.2(7)

1160 (I-P) — 2014: Performance Rating of Heat Pump Pool Heaters
Table C404.2

1200 (I-P) — 2013: Performance Rating of Commercial Refrigerated Display Merchandisers and Storage Cabinets
C403.10, Table C403.10.1(1), Table C403.10.1(2)

AMCA
Air Movement and Control Association International
30 West University Drive
Arlington Heights, IL 60004-1806

205—12: Energy Efficiency Classification for Fans
C403.8.3

220—08 (R 2012): Laboratory Methods of Testing Air Curtain Units for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
C402.5.6

500D—12: Laboratory Methods for Testing Dampers for Rating
C403.7.7

ANSI
American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor
New York, NY 10036

Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3—11: Gas Water Heaters, Volume III—Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu per Hour, Circulating Tank and Instantaneous
Table C404.2

Z21.47/CSA 2.3—12: Gas-fired Central Furnaces
Table C403.3.2(4)

Z83.8/CSA 2.6—09: Gas Unit Heaters, Gas Packaged Heaters, Gas Utility Heaters and Gas-fired Duct Furnaces
Table C403.3.2(4)

APSP
The Association of Pool & Spa Professionals
2111 Eisenhower Avenue, Suite 580
Alexandria, VA 22314

C404.8

ASHRAE
ASHRAE
1791 Tullie Circle NE
Atlanta, GA 30329

Table C403.3.2(9)

C403.1.1

C403.1.1

Table C403.3.2(2)

Table C403.3.2(2)
ASHRAE—continued

55—2013: Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy
   Table C407.5.1

90.1—2016: Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings
   C401.2, Table C402.1.3, Table C402.1.4, Table C407.6.1, C502.1, C503.1, C504.1

140—2014: Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Building Energy Analysis Computer Programs
   C407.6.1

146—2011: Testing and Rating Pool Heaters
   Table C404.2

ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Two Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

   C405.8.2

ASTM

American Society for Testing and Materials
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

C 90—14: Specification for Load-bearing Concrete Masonry Units
   Table C401.3

   C303.1.4.1, Table C402.1.4, 402.2.7

   Table C402.3

   Table C402.3

   C402.4.2.2

E 283—04(2012): Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen
   Table C402.5.2, C402.5.7

E 408—13: Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-meter Techniques
   Table C402.3

E 779—10: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization
   C402.5

   Table C402.3

   C402.5, C606.4

   Table C402.3

   Table C402.3, C402.3.2
CRRC

Table C402.3, C402.3.1

CSA

Table C402.5.2

C404.8

CSA B55.2—2015: Drain Water Heat Recovery Units
C404.8

CTI

ATC 105 (00): Acceptance Test Code for Water Cooling Tower
Table C403.3.2(8)

ATC 105S—11: Acceptance Test Code for Closed Circuit Cooling Towers
Table C403.3.2(8)

ATC 106—11: Acceptance Test for Mechanical Draft Evaporative Vapor Condensers
Table C403.3.2(8)

STD 201—11: Standard for Certification of Water Cooling Towers Thermal Performances
Table C403.3.2(8)

CTI STD 201 RS(15): Performance Rating of Evaporative Heat Rejection Equipment
Table C403.3.2(8)

DASMA

105—2016: Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Air Infiltration of Garage Doors and Rolling Doors
C303.1.3, Table C402.5.2

DOE

10 CFR, Part 430—2015: Energy Conservation Program for Consumer Products: Test Procedures and Certification and Enforcement Requirement for Plumbing Products; and Certification and Enforcement Requirements for Residential Appliances; Final Rule
Table C403.3.2(4), Table C403.3.2(5), Table C404.2
REFERENCED STANDARDS

DOE—continued

Boilers

C403.2(2), C405.6, C405.7

10 CFR, Part 431—2015: Energy Efficiency Program for Certain Commercial and Industrial Equipment: Test Procedures and
Efficiency Standards; Final Rules

Table C403.3.2(5), C405.6, C405.7

10 CFR 431 Subpart B App B: Uniform Test Method for Measuring Nominal Full Load Efficiency of Electric Motors

C403.2.8, Table C405.7(1), Table C405.7(2), Table C405.7(3), C405.7(4)


Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(2), Table C403.3.2(4)

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
500 New Jersey Avenue NW
6th Floor
Washington, DC 20001

IBC—18: International Building Code®

C201.3, C303.2, C402.5.3, C501.4

IFC—18: International Fire Code®

C201.3, C501.4

IFGC—18: International Fuel Gas Code®

C201.3, C501.4

IMC—18: International Mechanical Code®

C403.7.7, C403.2.2, C403.7.1, C403.7.2, C403.7.4, C403.7.5, C403.11.1, C403.11.2.1, C403.11.2.2,
C403.6, C403.6.6, C501.4

IPC—18: International Plumbing Code®

C201.3, C501.4

IPMC—18: International Property Maintenance Code®

C501.4

IPSDC—18: International Private Sewage Disposal Code®

C501.4

IEEE

Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
3 Park Avenue, 17th Floor
New York, NY 10016

Commercial Applications

C404.6.2

IES

Illuminating Engineering Society
120 Wall Street, 17th Floor
New York, NY 10005-4001


C401.2, Table C402.1.3, Table C402.1.4, C502.1, C503.1, C504.1

ISO

International Organization for Standardization
Chemin de Blandonnet 8, CP 401, 1214 Vernier
Geneva, Switzerland

Table C403.3.2(2)

C403.3.2(2)
REFERENCED STANDARDS

NEMA
National Electrical Manufacturers Association
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 900
Rosslyn, VA 22209

MG1—2014: Motors and Generators
C202

NFPA
National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

70—17: National Electrical Code
C501.4

NFRC
National Fenestration Rating Council, Inc.
6305 Ivy Lane, Suite 140
Greenbelt, MD 20770

100—2017: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Products U-factors
C303.1.3, C402.2.1.1

C303.1.3, C402.4.1.1

400—2017: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage
Table C402.5.2

SMACNA
Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors’ National Association, Inc.
4021 Lafayette Center Drive
Chantilly, VA 20151-1219

C402.2.1.1

UL
UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

710—12: Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment— with Revisions through November 2013
C403.7.5

727—06: Oil-fired Central Furnaces— with Revisions through October 2013
Table C403.3.2(4)

731—95: Oil-fired Unit Heaters— with Revisions through October 2013
Table C403.3.2(4)

1784—01: Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies— with Revisions through February 2015
C402.5.3

US-FTC
United States-Federal Trade Commission
600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20580

CFR Title 16 (2015): R-value Rule
C303.1.4

2020 CITY OF BOULDER ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE

C-90

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym “ICC” and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

Table C402.5.2
APPENDIX CA

SOLAR-READY ZONE—COMMERCIAL

SEE SECTION C406
INDEX

A

ACCESSIBLE
Controls ............................................. C402.2.3, C404.6, C404.9.1,
C405.2.2.3, C405.2.3.1
Defined ............................................... C202

ADDITIONAL EFFICIENCY PACKAGE ......... C406

ADDITIONS
Defined ............................................. C202
Historic buildings ............................. C501.6
Requirements ................................... C502

ADMINISTRATION
Chapter 1

AIR BARRIER ..................................... C402.5
Access openings ................................ C402.5.4
Construction .................................... C402.5.1.1
Dampers ......................................... C402.5.5, C403.7.7
Doors other than fenestration ............... C402.5.4
Fenestration ....... C402.5.2, Table C402.5.2
Penetrations .................................... C402.5.1.1
Recessed lighting ............................... C402.5.8
Rooms with fuel burning appliances ...... C402.5.3
Testing ........................................... C402.5
Vestibules ....................................... C402.5.7

AIR CONDITIONERS
Efficiency requirements ........................ Tables C403.3.2(1, 3)

AIR CURTAIN
Defined ............................................. C202
Vestibules ....................................... C402.5.7

AIR ECONOMIZERS
Defined ............................................. C202
Requirements ................................... C403.5, C403.5.1, C403.5.2,
C403.5.3, C403.5.4

AIR INFILTRATION (see AIR BARRIER)
Defined ............................................. C202

AIR INTAKES AND EXHAUSTS .............. C402.5.5,
C403.7.7

AIR LEAKAGE—THERMAL ENVELOPE
(see AIR BARRIER)

AIR SYSTEM BALANCING ..................... C408.2.2.1,
C408.2.2.2, C408.2.5.3

ALTERATIONS
Defined ............................................. C202
Historic buildings ............................. C501.6
Replacement fenestration .................... C401.2.1
Requirements ................................... C503

ALTERNATE MATERIALS ..................... C102

APPROVED
Defined ............................................. C202

APPROVED AGENCY
Defined ............................................. C202
Inspections ...................................... C105.4

AREA-WEIGHTED U-FACTOR ................. C402.4.3.4

AUTOMATIC
Defined ............................................. C202

B

BASEMENT WALLS (see WALL, BELOW GRADE)
Requirements ................................... C303.2.1

BELOW-GRADE WALLS
(see WALL, BELOW GRADE)

BOARD OF APPEALS ............................. C109
Limitations on authority ...................... C109.2
Qualifications of members ................... C109.3

BOILERS
Defined ............................................. C202
Requirements ................................... Table C403.3.2(5), C403.3.4,
C403.4.3, C404.2, Table C404.2
Setback controls ............................... C403.4.1.5
Turndown controls ............................. C403.3.4

BUILDING
Defined ............................................. C202
Multifamily residential ....................... C407.5.2.3

BUILDING COMMISSIONING
Defined ............................................. C202
Requirements ................................... C408

BUILDING ENTRANCE
Defined ............................................. C202
Exterior lighting ............................... Table C405.4.2(2)
Lighting controls .............................. C405.2.1.1
Vestibules ....................................... C402.5.7

BUILDING ENVELOPE
Compliance documentation .................... C103.2, C103.2.1
Defined ............................................. C202
Exemptions ..................................... C402.1.1, C402.1.2
Insulation ........................................ C303.1.1
Insulation and fenestration criteria ......... C402.1.3, Table C402.1.3,
C402.1.4, Table C402.1.4
Requirements ................................... C402
Performance method ......................... C407.3

BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE
Air leakage and barriers ...................... C402.5
Defined ............................................. C202
Doors ............................................. C402.4.5
Low-energy buildings ....................... C402.1.1
INDEX

Performance .................................. C402.1, C402.1.3, C402.1.4, C402.1.5
Rooms with fuel-burning appliances .......... C402.5.3
Specific insulation .......................... C402.2

C

C-FACTOR
Defined ....................................... C202
Assembly U-, C- or F-factor method .......... C402.1.4, Table C402.1.4

CAULKING AND WEATHERSTRIPING ........ C402.5.1.1, C402.5.3, C402.5.4, C402.5.6, C402.5.8

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY ...................... C501.4, C505

CHILLERS ....... Table C403.3.2(7), Table C407.5.1(4)
Positive displacement chilling packages ........ C403.3.2.2
Water-cooled centrifugal chiller packages ...... C403.3.2.1, Table C403.3.2(7), Table C407.5.1(5)

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM
Defined ....................................... C202
Requirements ................................ C404.6.1, C404.6.3

CIRCULATING PUMPS ........................ C403.4.3.3

CIRCULATING SYSTEMS .................... C403.4.3.3, C404.6

CLIMATE ZONES
Defined ....................................... C202
Established .................................. C301

CODE OFFICIAL
Approval of alternate methods ............... C102
Defined ....................................... C202
Examination of construction documents ...... C103.3
Inspections .................................. C105

COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP)
Defined ....................................... C202
Requirements ................................ Table C403.3.2(2), Table C403.3.2(7)

COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS
Compliance .................................. C101.2, C101.4.1, C101.5, C401.1, C401.2, Chapter 5
Defined ....................................... C202
Total building performance .................. C407

COMMISSIONING ............................. C408

COMPLIANCE AND ENFORCEMENT
General ...................................... C101.5
Existing buildings ........................... C501.4

COMPRESSOR (REFRIGERATION) SYSTEMS .... C403.10.4.2

COMPONENT PERFORMANCE APPROACH .......................... C402.1.5

COMPUTER ROOM
Air conditioning ............................. Table C403.3.2(9)
Defined ....................................... C202

CONDENSING UNITS
Defined ....................................... C202
Efficiency requirements ..................... Tables C403.3.2(1, 6)

CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA
Defined ....................................... C202

CONDITIONED SPACE
Defined ....................................... C202
Change from nonconditioned or low energy . C503.2
Roof solar reflectance ........................ C402.3
Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances .... C402.5.3

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS ................. C103
Amended ...................................... C103.4
Approval ..................................... C103.3.1
Examination .................................. C103.3
Information required ........................ C103.2
Phased approvals ............................ C103.3.3
Previous approvals .......................... C103.3.2
Retention .................................... C103.5
Revocation ................................... C105.7.1

CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER
Defined ....................................... C202
Required ..................................... C402.5.1

CONTINUOUS INSULATION
Defined ....................................... C202
Requirements ................................ Table C402.1.3, C402.1.5, C402.1.6, C402.2.5

CONTROLS
Capabilities .................................. C403, C403.3.1, C403.4.1, C403.4.1.2, C403.4.2.1, C403.4.2.2, C403.4.3.1, C403.4.5, C403.7.1, C404.6, 404.7
Chilled water plants .......................... C403.4.5
Economizers ................................ C403.5.1, C403.5.2, C403.5.3.2, C403.5.3.3, Table C403.5.3.3
Energy recovery systems ................. C403.7.4
Fan speed .................................. C403.8.1, C403.8.5, C403.8.5.1, C403.9
Freeze protection system ............... C403.12.3
Glazing ....................................... C402.4.3.3
Heat pump .................................. C403.4.1.1, C403.4.3.3
Heating and cooling ......................... C403.3.1, C403.4, C403.5.1
Hot water system ........................... C404.6
Humidity ................................... C403.4.1, C403.5.1, C403.7.4

2020 CITY OF BOULDER ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym “ICC” and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
COOLING TOWER .......................................................... C403.9.3, C403.9.4
COOLING WITH OUTDOOR AIR ...................................................... C403.5.1
CRAWL SPACE WALLS
Defined .............................................................. C202
Requirements .................................................. C303.2.1
CURTAIN WALL
Defined .............................................................. C202
Air leakage of fenestration ........................................ Table C402.5.2

DAMPERS ................................................................. C402.5.5, C403.7.7
DAYLIGHT RESPONSIVE CONTROL
Defined .............................................................. C202
Required .............................................................. C402.4.1.1, C402.4.1.2, C402.4.2.1, C402.4.3.1, C402.4.3.2, C405.2.3.1
DAYLIGHT ZONE .............................................................. C402.4.4, C405.2.3.2, C405.2.3.3
Defined .............................................................. C202
Under skylights .......................................................... C402.4.1.2, C402.4.2, C405.2.2.3
DAYLIGHT ZONE CONTROL ...................................................... C405.2.3
DEFINITIONS .............................................................. Chapter 2
DEMAND CONTROL VENTILATION (DCV)
Defined .............................................................. C202
Requirements .................................................. C403.7.1
DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM
Defined .............................................................. C202
Requirements .................................................. C403.8.5.1
DESIGN CONDITIONS ...................................................... C302
DIRECT EXPANSION (DX) ...................................................... C403.8.5.1
INDEX

ENERGY ANALYSIS, ANNUAL
Defined ........................................... C202
Documentation .................................. C407
Requirements .................................. C407

ENERGY COST
Compliance performance ..................... C401.2
Defined ........................................... C202
Performance basis ................................ C407.3

ENERGY EFFICIENCY RATIO (EER) ........... C403.3.2, Tables C403.3.2(1, 2, 3, 6, 7)

ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEMS Defined ........................................... C202
Requirements .................................. C401.1.1, C403.7.4

ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL
Defined ........................................... C202
Requirements/use ......................... C101.5.1, C407, C407.2, C407.5

ENTRANCE DOOR
Air leakage ..................................... Table C402.5.2
Defined ........................................... C202
Thermal performance ........................ Table C402.4

ENVELOPE, BUILDING THERMAL
Defined ........................................... C202

ENVELOPE DESIGN METHODS ................. C402.1.3, C402.1.4, C402.1.5

EQUIPMENT BUILDINGS ....................... C402.1.2

EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCIES ................. C103.2, C403.3.2, C403.5.1, C403.8.5, C404.2

EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS ........................................... C403.3.2
Boilers ......................................... Table C403.3.2(5)
Condensing units .......................... Table C403.3.2(6)
Economizer exception ....................... Tables C403.5.2
Heat rejection equipment ............... Table C403.3.2(8)
Packaged terminal air conditioners and
heat pump .................................. Table C403.3.2(3)
Unitary air conditioners and
condensing units .......................... Table C403.3.2(1)
Unitary and applied heat pumps .. Table C403.3.2(2)
Warm air duct furnaces and
unit heaters ............................... Table C403.3.2(4)
Warm air furnaces .......................... Table C403.3.2(4)
Warm air furnaces/ air-conditioning units .... Table C403.3.2(4)
Water chilling packages, standard ........ Table C403.3.2(7)
Water heating ............................. Table C404.2, C404.2.1

EQUIPMENT ROOM ................................ C202
Lower power allowance .................. Table C405.4.2(2)

ESCALATORS ................................ C405.8.2

EXEMPT BUILDINGS .......................... C401.1.1, C402.1.2

EXHAUSTS .................................. C402.1.2

EXIT SIGNS ................................ C405.2, C405.3.1

EXISTING BUILDINGS ....................... Chapter 5

EXTERNAL LIGHTING ......................... C405.2.5, C405.4

EXTERNAL SHADING ........................ Table C407.5.1(1)

EXTERIOR WALLS
Defined ........................................... C202
Thermal performance ..................... C402, C402.2.2

F

F-FACTOR
Defined ........................................... C202
Assembly U-, C- or F-factor method ....... C402.1.4, Table C402.1.4

FAN BRAKE HORSEPOWER (BHP)
Defined ........................................... C202

FAN EFFICIENCY GRADE (FEG)
Defined ........................................... C202
Requirements .................................. C403.8.3

FAN FLOOR HORSEPOWER ................. C403.8.1

FAN POWER LIMITATION ...................... Tables C403.8.1(1, 2)

FAN SYSTEM BHP
Allowable ...................................... C403.8.1
Defined ........................................... C202

FAN SYSTEM DESIGN CONDITIONS
Allowable ...................................... C403.8.2
Defined ........................................... C202

FAN SYSTEM MOTOR NAMEPLATE HP
Defined ........................................... C202

FAULT DETECTION & DIAGNOSTICS (FDD)
Economizers .................................. C403.2.5.5

FEES ........................................... C104

Fees ........................................... C104
Refunds ....................................... C104.5
Related fees .................................. C104.4
Schedule of permit fees .................. C104.2

FENESTRATION (see also Doors) ............. C303.1.3, C402.4
Air leakage (infiltration) rate ............ C402.5.2, Table C402.5.2
Defined ........................................... C202
Maximum area ................................ C402.4.1, C402.4.1.2
Rating and labeling ................. C303.1.3, C402.1.3
Skylights ...................................... C402.4.1.2, C402.4.2, C402.4.2.1, C402.4.2.2, C402.4.3, C502.2.2, C503.3.3
Solar heat gain (SHGC) ................. C402.4.3, Table C402.4
Vertical ........................................ C402.1, C402.1.4.1.1, C402.4.3, Table C402.4, C502.2.1, C503.3.2

2020 CITY OF BOULDER ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym “ICC” and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
INDEX

INSULATION
Continuous insulation .................. C303.2.2, C402.1.3, Table C402.1.3, C402.2.1
Duct .................................... C403.11.1
Identification .......................... C303.1.1, C303.1.2
Installation ............................ C303.1.1, C303.1.1.1, C303.1.2, C303.2
Mechanical system piping .............. C403.11.3
Piping .................................. C404.4
Plenum .................................. C403.11.1
Product rating .......................... C303.1.4
Protection of exposed foundation ...... C303.2.1
Protection of piping insulation ...... C403.11.3.1
Radiant heating systems .............. C402.2.6
Requirements .......................... C402.1.3, Table C402.1.3, C402.2 through C402.2.6

INTEGRATED PART LOAD VALUE (IPLV)
Defined ................................. C202
Requirements ......................... Tables C403.3.2(6, 7), C403.3.2.1, Table 403.3(2)

INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ............. C405.3, C405.3.2

K
KITCHEN EXHAUST ..................... C403.7.5, Table C403.7.5

L
LABELED
Dampers ................................ C403.7.7
Defined ............................... C202
Fans .................................... C403.8.3
Glazing, skylights ..................... C402.4.2.4, C402.4.2.4, C402.5.2
HVAC equipment ...................... Table C403.3.2(3)
Lighting .............................. C402.5.8, C405.3.1
Requirements ....................... C303.1.3, C303.3, Table C403.3.2(3)

LIGHTING POWER
Additional lighting .................... C405.3.2.2.1, C405.4.1
Design procedures .................... C405.3.2, C405.3.2.1, C405.3.2.2
Exterior connected .................... C405.4, C405.4.1, Tables C405.4.2(1, 2)
Interior connected .................... C405.3, C405.3.1, C405.3.2, Tables C405.3.2(1, 2)

LIGHTING SYSTEMS .................. C405
Controls, exterior ..................... C405.2.5, Tables C405.4.2(1, 2), C405.4.1

Controls, interior ............................. C405.2.2, C405.3, C405.3.1, C405.3.2,
Tables C405.3.2(1, 2)

Daylight responsive .......................... C405.2.3, C405.2.3.1
Dwelling and sleeping units .................. C405.1, C405.2.2, C405.2.3, C405.2.4, C405.3.1
Existing buildings ..................... C502.1, C502.2.6, C503.1, C503.6, 504.1
Light reduction .......................... C405.2.2.2
Occupant sensor controls .............. C405.2.1.1, C405.2.1.2
Recessed ................................ C405.5.8
Retail display .......................... C405.3.2.2.1
Specific applications .......................... C405.2.4
Time switch controls ................. C405.2.2, C405.2.2.1

LINER SYSTEM (Ls)
Defined ............................. C202
Insulation .......................... Table C402.1.3

LISTED
Defined ............................. C202
Kitchen exhaust hoods .................. C403.7.5
Skylights .............................. C402.2.1.1
LOADING DOCK WEATHERSEALS ........ C402.5.6
LOW-ENERGY BUILDINGS ............... C402.1.1
LOW-SLOPED ROOF
Defined ............................. C202
Roof solar reflectance ................ C402.3

LUMINAIRE
Controls .............................. C405.2, C405.2.1, C405.2.2, C405.2.3, C405.2.4
Sealed ................................ C405.5.8
Wattage .............................. C405.3.1, C405.4.1

MAINTENANCE
General .............................. C501.2, C501.3
Instructions for equipment and systems .................. C303.3
Owner responsibility .................. C501.3
MANUALS ............................. C101.5.1
Defined ............................. C202

MASS
Floor ................................. Table C402.1.3, Table C402.1.4
Wall ................................. C402.2.2

MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT ............... C303
MECHANICAL SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT .......... C403
Existing buildings ..................... C501.5, C502.1, C502.2.3, C503.4, C504
MECHANICAL VENTILATION ............. C403.1, C403.2.2
### INDEX

#### Meters, Electrical
- C405.5

#### Motor Nameplate Horsepower
- C403.8.2
- Efficiency: C405.7

#### Moving Walkways
- C405.8.2

#### Multifamily Residential Buildings
- C407.5.2.3

#### Multiple-Zone Systems
- C403.6
- C403.6.5

### N

#### Nameplate Horsepower
- Defined: C202

#### Net Floor Area (see Floor Area, Net)

#### Nonconditioned Space
- Alterations: C503.2

#### Nonstandard Part Load Value
- Defined: C202

### O

#### Occupancy
- Complex HVAC systems: C403.6
- Compliance: C101.4, C101.5
- Lighting power allowances: C405.2.2, C405.3.2, C405.3.2.1, C405.3.2(1, 2)
- Mixed occupancies: C101.4.1

#### Occupant Sensor Control
- Commissioning: C408.3.1.1
- Defined: C202
- Outdoor heating: C403.12.1
- Required: C405.2.1, C405.2.1.1, C405.2.1.2

#### Off-Hour, Controls
- Defined: C403.4.2, C403.7.7, C405.2.2.1

#### On-Site Renewable Energy
- Defined: C202

#### Opaque Areas
- Defined: C402.1
- Table C402.1.3, C402.1.4

#### Opaque Doors
- Defined: C202
- Regulated: Table C402.1.3, C402.1.4, C402.4.5

#### Operating & Maintenance Manual
- Defined: C408.2.5.2

#### Orientation
- Daylight Responsive controls: C405.2.3.1
- Fenestration: Table C402.4
- Thermostatic controls: C403.4.1, C407.5.2.2

### P

#### Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC)
- Requirements: Table C403.3.2(3)

#### Packaged Terminal Heat Pump
- Requirements: Table C403.3.2(3)

#### Parking Garage Ventilation
- C403.7.2

#### Performance Analysis
- C407

#### Permit (see Fees)
- Work commencing before permit: C104.3

#### Pipe Insulation
- C403.11.3, Table C403.11.3, C404.4

#### Plans and Specifications
- C103

#### Plenums
- Insulation and sealing: C403.11.1

#### Pools
- Controls: C404.9.1, C404.9.2
- Covers: C404.9.3
- Existing buildings: C502.2.5

#### Powered Roof/Wall Ventilators
- Defined: C202
- Fan efficiency exemption: C403.8.3

#### Proposed Design
- Defined: C202
- Requirements: C407

#### Public Lavatory
- C404.5

#### Pumping Systems
- C403.4.3.3, C404.6, C408.2.2.2

### R

#### R-Value
- Above-grade walls: C402.2.2
- Defined: C202
- Insulation component method: C402.1.3, Table C402.1.3
- Roof assemblies: C402.2.1
- Slabs on grade: C402.2.4
- Steel stud walls: C402.1.4.1, Table C402.1.4.1

#### Radiant Heating System
- Defined: C202
- Insulation: C402.2.6

#### Ready Access
- Defined: C202
- Lighting controls: C405.2.2.3, C405.2.3.1

#### Recooling
- C403.6

#### Referenced Standards
- C107, Chapter 6

#### Refrigerated Warehouse Cooler
- Defined: C202
- Requirements: C403.10.1

---

2020 CITY OF BOULDER ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE

C-101

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym "ICC" and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## CHAPTER 1  SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION ...............R-3

### PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION ............R-3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R101</td>
<td>Scope and General Requirements .......... R-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R102</td>
<td>Alternative Materials, Design and Methods of Construction and Equipment .......... R-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT ............R-3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R103</td>
<td>Construction Documents .................. R-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R104</td>
<td>Fees ........................................ R-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R105</td>
<td>Inspections ................................ R-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R106</td>
<td>Validity .................................... R-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R107</td>
<td>Referenced Standards ..................... R-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R108</td>
<td>Stop Work Order ........................... R-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R109</td>
<td>Board of Appeals .......................... R-6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 2  DEFINITIONS .....................R-7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R201</td>
<td>General .................. R-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R202</td>
<td>General Definitions ................. R-7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 3  GENERAL REQUIREMENTS .......R-11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R301</td>
<td>Climate Zones .................. R-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R302</td>
<td>Design Conditions ................ R-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R303</td>
<td>Materials, Systems and Equipment .... R-11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 4  RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY .................R-15

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R401</td>
<td>General .................. R-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R402</td>
<td>Building Thermal Envelope ........... R-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R403</td>
<td>Systems ................... R-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R404</td>
<td>Electrical Power and Lighting Systems. R-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R405</td>
<td>Reserved .................. R-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R406</td>
<td>Energy Rating Index Compliance Alternative ................ R-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R407</td>
<td>Solar Readiness .................... R-25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 5  EXISTING BUILDINGS .......R-27

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R501</td>
<td>General .................. R-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R502</td>
<td>Additions .................... R-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R503</td>
<td>Alterations .................... R-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R504</td>
<td>Repairs ..................... R-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R505</td>
<td>Change of Occupancy or Use .......... R-29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 6  REFERENCED STANDARDS .......R-31

## APPENDIX RA  SOLAR-READY PROVISIONS—DETACHED ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS AND TOWNHOUSES (See Section R407) ............R-35

## INDEX ..................... R-37
PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION R101
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

R101.1 Title. This code shall be known as the 2020 City of Boulder Energy Conservation Code, and shall be cited as such. It is referred to herein as “this code.”

R101.2 Scope. This code applies to residential buildings and the building sites and associated systems and equipment.

R101.3 Intent. This code shall regulate the design and construction of buildings for the effective use and conservation of energy over the useful life of each building. This code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

R101.4 Applicability. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.

R101.4.1 Mixed residential and commercial buildings. Where a building includes both residential building and commercial building portions, each portion shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of the IECC—Commercial Provisions or IECC—Residential Provisions.


R101.5.1 Compliance materials. The code official shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this code.
R 103.2 Information on construction documents. Construction documents shall be drawn to scale on suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where approved by the code official. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed, and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the building, systems and equipment as herein governed. Details shall include the following as applicable:

1. Insulation materials and their R-values.
2. Fenestration U-factors and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGC).
3. Area-weighted U-factor and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGC) calculations.
4. Mechanical system design criteria.
5. Mechanical and service water-heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.
6. Equipment and system controls.
7. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.
8. Air sealing details.

R 103.2.1 Building thermal envelope depiction. The building thermal envelope shall be represented on the construction documents.

R 103.3 Examination of documents. The code official shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying construction documents and shall ascertain whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances. The code official is authorized to utilize a registered design professional, or other approved entity not affiliated with the building design or construction, in conducting the review of the plans and specifications for compliance with the code.

R 103.3.1 Approval of construction documents. When the code official issues a permit where construction documents are required, the construction documents shall be endorsed in writing and stamped “Reviewed for Code Compliance.” Such approved construction documents shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the code official. Work shall be done in accordance with the approved construction documents.

One set of construction documents so reviewed shall be retained by the code official. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, kept at the site of work and shall be open to inspection by the code official or a duly authorized representative.

R 103.3.2 Previous approvals. This code shall not require changes in the construction documents, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful permit has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursu ed in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

R 103.3.3 Phased approval. The code official shall have the authority to issue a permit for the construction of part of an energy conservation system before the construction documents for the entire system have been submitted or approved, provided adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this code. The holders of such permit shall proceed at their own risk without assurance that the permit for the entire energy conservation system will be granted.

R 103.4 Amended construction documents. Work shall be installed in accordance with the approved construction documents, and any changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the approved construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents.

R 103.5 Retention of construction documents. One set of approved construction documents shall be retained by the code official for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws.

SECTION R104
FEES

R 104.1 Fees. A permit shall not be issued until the fees prescribed in Section R104.2 have been paid, nor shall an amendment to a permit be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.

R 104.2 Schedule of permit fees. A fee for each permit shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.

R 104.3 Work commencing before permit issuance. Any person who commences any work before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to an additional fee established by the code official that shall be in addition to the required permit fees.

R 104.4 Related fees. The payment of the fee for the construction, alteration, removal or demolition of work done in connection to or concurrently with the work or activity authorized by a permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.

R 104.5 Refunds. The code official is authorized to establish a refund policy.

SECTION R105
INSPECTIONS

R 105.1 General. Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the code official or his or her designated agent, and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until approved. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes. Neither the code official
nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material, product, system or building component required to allow inspection to validate compliance with this code.

**R 105.2 Required inspections.** The code official or his or her designated agent, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in Sections R 105.2.1 through R 105.2.5.

**R 105.2.1 Footing and foundation inspection.** Inspections associated with footings and foundations shall verify compliance with the code as to R-value, location, thickness, depth of burial and protection of insulation as required by the code and approved plans and specifications.

**R 105.2.2 Framing and rough-in inspection.** Inspections at framing and rough-in shall be made before application of interior finish and shall verify compliance with the code as to: types of insulation and corresponding R-values and their correct location and proper installation; fenestration properties such as U-factor and SHGC and proper installation; and air leakage controls as required by the code, and approved plans and specifications.

**R 105.2.3 Plumbing rough-in inspection.** Inspections at plumbing rough-in shall verify compliance as required by the code and approved plans and specifications as to types of insulation and corresponding R-values and protection, and required controls.

**R 105.2.4 Mechanical rough-in inspection.** Inspections at mechanical rough-in shall verify compliance as required by the code and approved plans and specifications as to installed HVAC equipment type and size, required controls, system insulation and corresponding R-value, system air leakage controls, programmable thermostats, dampers, whole-house ventilation, and minimum fan efficiency.

**Exception:** Systems serving multiple dwelling units shall be inspected in accordance with Section C 105.2.4.

**R 105.2.5 Final inspection.** The building shall have a final inspection and shall not be occupied until approved. The final inspection shall include verification of the installation of all required building systems, equipment and controls and their proper operation and the required number of high-efficacy lamps and fixtures.

**R 105.3 Reinspection.** A building shall be reinspected where determined necessary by the code official.

**R 105.4 Approved inspection agencies.** The code official is authorized to accept reports of third-party inspection agencies not affiliated with the building design or construction, provided that such agencies are approved as to qualifications and reliability relevant to the building components and systems that they are inspecting.

**R 105.5 Inspection requests.** It shall be the duty of the holder of the permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the code official when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.

**R 105.6 Reinspection and testing.** Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the code official for inspection and testing.

**R 105.7 Approval.** After the prescribed tests and inspections indicate that the work complies in all respects with this code, a notice of approval shall be issued by the code official.

**R 105.7.1 Revocation.** The code official is authorized to, in writing, suspend or revoke a notice of approval issued under the provisions of this code wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the building or structure, premise, or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

### SECTION R106

**VALIDITY**

**R 106.1 General.** If a portion of this code is held to be illegal or void, such a decision shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this code.

### SECTION R107

**REFERRED STANDARDS**

**R 107.1 Referenced codes and standards.** The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those indicated in Chapter 5, and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections R 107.1.1 and R 107.1.2.

**R 107.1.1 Conflicts.** Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

**R 107.1.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards.** Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

**R 107.2 Application of references.** References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

**R 107.3 Other laws.** The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

### SECTION R108

**STOP WORK ORDER**

**R 108.1 Authority.** Where the code official finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner either contrary to the provisions of this code or dangerous or unsafe, the code official is authorized to issue a stop work order.
SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

R 108.2 Issuance. The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property involved, to the owner’s authorized agent, or to the person doing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work will be permitted to resume.

R 108.3 Emergencies. Where an emergency exists, the code official shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.

R 108.4 Failure to comply. Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to a fine as set by the applicable governing authority.

SECTION R109
BOARD OF APPEALS

R 109.1 General. In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the code official relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The code official shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall not have a vote on any matter before the board. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the governing body and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business, and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the code official.

R 109.2 Limitations on authority. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code.

R 109.3 Qualifications. The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training and are not employees of the jurisdiction.
CHAPTER 2 [RE]
DEFINITIONS

User note:

About this chapter: Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code. Chapter 2 performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purpose of the code.

SECTION R201
GENERAL

R201.1 Scope. Unless stated otherwise, the following words and terms in this code shall have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

R201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural includes the singular.

R201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Terms that are not defined in this code but are defined in the International Building Code, International Fire Code, International Fuel Gas Code, International Mechanical Code, International Plumbing Code or the International Residential Code shall have the meanings ascribed to them in those codes.

R201.4 Terms not defined. Terms not defined by this chapter shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION R202
GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ABOVE-GRADE WALL. A wall more than 50 percent above grade and enclosing conditioned space. This includes between-floor spandrels, peripheral edges of floors, roof and basement knee walls, dormer walls, gable end walls, walls enclosing a mansard roof and skylight shafts.

ACCESSIBLE. Admitting close approach as a result of not being guarded by locked doors, elevation or other effective means (see “Readily accessible”).

ADDITION. An extension or increase in the conditioned space floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure.

AIR BARRIER. One or more materials joined together in a continuous manner to restrict or prevent the passage of air through the building thermal envelope and its assemblies.

AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION. An insulation that functions as an air barrier material.

ALTERATION. Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition. Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

ALTERATION, LEVEL 1. An alteration that includes the removal and replacement or the covering of existing materials, elements, equipment or fixtures using new materials, elements, equipment or fixtures that serve the same purpose.

ALTERATION, LEVEL 2. An alteration that includes the reconfiguration of space, the addition or elimination of any door or window, the reconfiguration or extension of any system, or the installation of any additional equipment.

ALTERATION, LEVEL 3. An alteration where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area.

ALTERATION, LEVEL 4. An alteration where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area, mechanical and lighting systems are substantially replaced, and where the alteration meets the criteria of substantial structural alteration, including fenestration replacement.

APPROVED. Acceptable to the code official.

APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests furnishing inspection services, or furnishing product certification, where such agency has been approved by the code official.

AUTOMATIC. Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration (see “Manual”).

BASEMENT WALL. A wall 50 percent or more below grade and enclosing conditioned space.

BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy, including any mechanical systems, service water heating systems and electric power and lighting systems located on the building site and supporting the building.

BUILDING SITE. A contiguous area of land that is under the ownership or control of one entity.

BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE. The basement walls, exterior walls, floors, ceiling, roofs and any other building element assemblies that enclose conditioned space or provide a boundary between conditioned space and exempt or unconditioned space.

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM. A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to fixtures and back to the water-heating equipment.
DEFINITIONS

CLIMATE ZONE. A geographical region based on climatic criteria as specified in this code.

CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

COMMERCIAL BUILDING. For this code, all buildings that are not included in the definition of “Residential building.”

CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA. The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the conditioned space.

CONDITIONED SPACE. An area, room or space that is enclosed within the building thermal envelope and that is directly or indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER. A combination of materials and assemblies that restrict or prevent the passage of air through the building thermal envelope.

CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci). Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior, or is integral to any opaque surface, of the building envelope.

CRAWL SPACE WALL. The opaque portion of a wall that encloses a crawl space and is partially or totally below grade.

CURTAIN WALL. Fenestration products used to create an opaque/glazed or transparent/glazed wall that is mounted at a horizontal or vertical slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.

DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM. A water distribution system having one or more recirculation pumps that pump water from a heated water supply pipe back to the heated water source through a cold water supply pipe.

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling equipment and appliances.

DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV). A motorized vehicle registered for on-road use, powered by an electric motor that draws current from rechargeable storage that is charged by being plugged into an electrical source.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE CAPABLE SPACE. A designated parking space that is provided with conduit sized for a 40-amp, 208/240-volt dedicated branch circuit from a building electrical service panel to the parking space and sufficient physical space in the same building electrical service panel to accommodate a 40-amp dual-pole circuit breaker.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE READY SPACE. A parking space that is provided with one 40-amp, 208/240-volt dedicated branch circuit for electric vehicle supply equipment that is terminated at a receptacle, a junction box or electric vehicle supply equipment within the parking space.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT (EVSE). The electrical conductors and equipment external to the electric vehicle that provide a connection between an electric vehicle and a power source to provide electric vehicle charging.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT (EVSE) INSTALLED SPACE. A parking space with electric vehicle supply equipment capable of supplying current at 40 amps at 208/240 volt.

ENERGY ANALYSIS. A method for estimating the annual energy use of the proposed design and standard reference design based on estimates of energy use.

ENERGY COST. The total estimated annual cost for purchased energy for the building functions regulated by this code, including applicable demand charges.

ENERGY IMPACT OFFSET FUND. A city-approved and city-managed offset fund providing a payment option in lieu of complying with city program renewable energy and/or offset requirements.

ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL. An approved software program or calculation-based methodology that projects the annual energy use of a building.

ERI REFERENCE DESIGN. A version of the rated design that meets the minimum requirements of the 2006 International Energy Conservation Code.

EXTERIOR WALL. Walls including both above-grade walls and basement walls.

FENESTRATION. Products classified as either vertical fenestration or skylights.

Skylights. Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.

Vertical fenestration. Windows that are fixed or operable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque/glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT. A fenestration designed to be made up of field-glazed or field-assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory-formed framing and glazing units. Examples of site-built fenestration include storefront systems, curtain walls and atrium roof systems.

HEATED SLAB. Slab-on-grade construction in which the heating elements, hydronic tubing, or hot air distribution system is in contact with, or placed within or under, the slab.

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym “ICC” and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
DEFINITIONS

HIGH-EFFICACY LIGHT SOURCES. Compact fluorescent lamps, light-emitting diode (LED) lamps, T-8 or smaller diameter linear fluorescent lamps, other lamps with an efficacy of not less than 65 lumens per watt, or luminaires with an efficacy of not less than 45 lumens per watt.

HISTORIC BUILDING. Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:
1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register-listed, state-designated or locally designated historic district.

INfiltration. The uncontrolled inward air leakage into a building caused by the pressure effects of wind or the effect of differences in the indoor and outdoor air density or both.

Insulated Siding. A type of continuous insulation with manufacturer-installed insulating material as an integral part of the cladding product having an R-value of not less than R-2.

Labeled. Equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, approved agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of such labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

Listed. Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the code official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

Low-voltage Lighting. Lighting equipment powered through a transformer such as a cable conductor, a rail conductor and track lighting.

Manual. Capable of being operated by personal intervention (see “Automatic”).

Off-site Solar Subscription. A 20-year subscription to a solar generation facility where the beneficial use of the electricity generated by the facility belongs to subscribers to the solar generation facility as authorized in §40-2-127, C.R.S.

Opaque Door. A door that is not less than 50-percent opaque in surface area.

Proposed Design. A description of the proposed building used to estimate annual energy use for determining compliance based on total building performance.

Rated Design. A description of the proposed building used to determine the energy rating index.

Readily Accessible. Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal or inspection without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders or access equipment (see “Accessible”).

Repair. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

Reroofing. The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See “Roof recover” and “Roof replacement.”

Residential Building. For this code, includes detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, and Group R-3 and R-4 buildings three stories or less in height above grade plane with separate means of egress.

Roof Assembly. A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly includes the roof covering, underlayment and roof deck, and can also include a thermal barrier, an ignition barrier, insulation or a vapor retarder.

Roof Recover. The process of installing an additional roof covering over a prepared existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

Roof Repair. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purposes of its maintenance.

Roof Replacement. The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.

R-Value (Thermal Resistance). The inverse of the time rate of heat flow through a body from one of its bounding surfaces to the other surface for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area (h • ft² • °F/Btu) (m² • K)/W).

Service Water Heating. Supply of hot water for purposes other than comfort heating.

Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC). The ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration assembly to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation that is then reradiated, conducted or convected into the space.

Solar-Ready Zone. A section or sections of the roof or building overhang designated and reserved for the future installation of a solar photovoltaic or solar thermal system.

Standard Reference Design. A version of the proposed design that meets the minimum requirements of this code and is used to determine the maximum annual energy use requirement for compliance based on total building performance.

Substantial Structural Alteration. An alteration in which the gravity load-carrying structural elements altered within a five-year period support more than 30 percent of the total floor area and roof area of the building or structure. The areas to be counted toward the 30 percent shall...
DEFINITIONS

include mezzanines, penthouses, and in-filled courts and shafts tributary to the altered structural elements.

SUNROOM. A one-story structure attached to a dwelling with a glazing area in excess of 40 percent of the gross area of the structure’s exterior walls and roof.

THERMAL ISOLATION. Physical and space conditioning separation from conditioned spaces. The conditioned spaces shall be controlled as separate zones for heating and cooling or conditioned by separate equipment.

THERMOSTAT. An automatic control device used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

U-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE). The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films (Btu/h · ft² · °F) [W/(m² · K)].

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. That portion of supply air that comes from outside (outdoors) plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE [VT]. The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light. Visible Transmittance includes the effects of glazing material and frame and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

WHOLE HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM. A exhaust system, supply system, or combination thereof that is designed to mechanically exchange indoor air with outdoor air when operating continuously or through a programmed intermittent schedule to satisfy the whole house ventilation rates.

ZONE. A space or group of spaces within a building with heating or cooling requirements that are sufficiently similar so that desired conditions can be maintained throughout using a single controlling device.
CHAPTER 3 [RE]
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

User note:

About this chapter: Chapter 3 covers general regulations for energy conservation features of buildings. The climate zone for a building is established by geographic location tables and figures in this chapter.

SECTION R301
CLIMATE ZONES

R301.1 General. This code shall apply only to projects located in Climate Zone 5B.

SECTION R302
DESIGN CONDITIONS

R302.1 Interior design conditions. The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and minimum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

SECTION R303
MATERIALS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

R303.1 Identification. Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

R303.1.1 Building thermal envelope insulation. An R-value identification mark shall be applied to each piece of building thermal envelope insulation that is 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. Alternatively, the insulation installers shall provide a certification that indicates the type, manufacturer, and R-value of insulation installed in each element of the building thermal envelope. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose insulation, the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled R-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be indicated on the certification.

For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the areas covered and the R-value of the installed thickness shall be indicated on the certification. For insulated siding, the R-value shall be on a label on the product’s package and shall be indicated on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

Exception: For roof insulation installed above the deck, the R-value shall be labeled as required by the material standards specified in Table 1508.2 of the International Building Code or Table R906.2 of the International Residential Code, as applicable.

R303.1.1.1 Blown-in or sprayed roof and ceiling insulation. The thickness of blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose roof and ceiling insulation shall be at not less than one for every 300 square feet (28 m²) throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic access opening. The thickness and installed R-value of sprayed polyurethane foam insulation shall be indicated on the certification provided by the insulation installer.

R303.1.2 Insulation mark installation. Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer’s R-value mark is readily observable at inspection.

R303.1.3 Fenestration product rating. U-factors of fenestration products such as windows, doors and skylights shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100.

Exception: Where required, garage door U-factors shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DSMA 105.

U-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer.

Products lacking such a labeled U-factor shall be assigned a default U-factor from Table R303.1.3(1) or R303.1.3(2). The solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) and visible transmittance (VT) of glazed fenestration products such as windows, glazed doors and skylights shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a labeled SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table R303.1.3(3).

R303.1.4 Insulation product rating. The thermal resistance, R-value, of insulation shall be determined in accordance with Part 460 of US-FTC CFR Title 16 in units of h • ft² • °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

R303.1.4.1 Insulated siding. The thermal resistance, R-value, of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

R303.2 Installation. Materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the Grade I insulation installation requirements in RESNET/ICC 301 and the International Building Code or the International Residential Code, as applicable.
R303.2.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation.
Insulation applied to the exterior of basement walls, crawl space walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation’s thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

R303.3 Maintenance information.
Maintenance instructions shall be furnished for equipment and systems that require preventive maintenance. Required regular maintenance actions shall be clearly stated and incorporated on a readily accessible label. The label shall include the title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE R303.1.3(1)</th>
<th>DEFAULT GLAZED WINDOW, GLASS DOOR AND SKYLIGHT U-FACTORs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FRAME TYPE</td>
<td>WINDOW AND GLASS DOOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single pane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal</td>
<td>1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal with Thermal Break</td>
<td>1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonmetal or Metal Clad</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glazed Block</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE R303.1.3(2)</th>
<th>DEFAULT OPAQUE DOOR U-FACTORs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DOOR TYPE</td>
<td>OPAQUE U-FACTOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uninsulated Metal</td>
<td>1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulated Metal</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulated, nonmetal edge, not exceeding 45% glazing, any glazing double pane</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE R303.1.3(3)</th>
<th>DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGLE GLAZED</td>
<td>DOUBLE GLAZED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GLAZED BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear</td>
<td>Tinted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHGC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 4 [RE]
RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

User note:

About this chapter: Chapter 4 provides requirements for the thermal envelope of a building, including minimum insulation values for walls, ceiling and floors; maximum fenestration U-factors; minimum fenestration solar heat gain coefficients; and methods for determining building assembly and a total building U-factor. A performance alternative and an energy rating alternative are also provided to allow for energy code compliance other than by the prescriptive method.

SECTION R401
GENERAL

R 401.1 Scope. This chapter applies to residential buildings.

R 401.2 Compliance. New buildings less than or equal to 500 square feet of conditioned floor area shall comply with either Item 1 or Item 2 of this section. New buildings greater than 500 square feet of conditioned floor area shall comply with Item 2.

1. Sections R 401 through R 404 and R 407.

2. The energy rating index (ERI) approach in Sections R 406 and R 407.

R 401.3 Documentation (Mandatory).

R 401.3.1 Certificate. A permanent certificate shall be completed by the builder or other approved party and posted on a wall in the space where the furnace is located, a utility room or an approved location inside the building. Where located on an electrical panel, the certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory label, service disconnect label or other required labels. The certificate shall indicate the predominant R-values of insulation installed in or on ceilings, roofs, walls, foundation components such as slabs, basement walls, crawl space walls and floors and ducts outside conditioned spaces; U-factors of fenestration and the solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) of fenestration, and the results from any required duct system and building envelope air leakage testing performed on the building. Where there is more than one value for each component, the certificate shall indicate the value covering the largest area. The certificate shall indicate the types and efficiencies of heating, cooling and service water heating equipment. Where a gas-fired unvented room heater, electric furnace or baseboard electric heater is installed in the residence, the certificate shall indicate “gas-fired unvented room heater,” “electric furnace” or “baseboard electric heater,” as appropriate. An efficiency shall not be indicated for gas-fired unvented room heaters, electric furnaces and electric baseboard heaters. The ERI, both with and without on-site generation, as determined in accordance with Section R 406, shall be listed on the certificate.

R 401.3.2 Homeowner’s manual. The builder or owner’s agent shall provide the owner with a binder of all equipment and appliance manufacturers’ installation manuals, except for manuals that are required to be affixed to the equipment. These include the energy assessment report and ERI certificate. If the code official approved a community solar garden subscription attributed to the property as a means to meet the requirements of this chapter, the manual shall include any requirements for a continued subscription to a community solar garden necessary to meet the requirements of this chapter.

SECTION R402
BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE

R 402.1 General (Prescriptive). The building thermal envelope shall comply with the requirements of Sections R 402.1.1 through R 402.1.5.

Exceptions:

1. The following low-energy buildings, or portions thereof, separated from the remainder of the building by building thermal envelope assemblies complying with this section shall be exempt from the building thermal envelope provisions of Section R 402:

   1.1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h・ft² (10.7 W/m²) or 1.0 watt/ft² of floor area for space-conditioning purposes.

   1.2. Those that do not contain conditioned space.

2. Log homes designed in accordance with ICC 400.

R 402.1.1 Vapor retarder. Wall assemblies in the building thermal envelope shall comply with the vapor retarder requirements of Section R 702.7 of the International Residential Code or Section 1404.3 of the International Building Code, as applicable.

R 402.1.2 Insulation and fenestration criteria. The building thermal envelope shall meet the requirements of Table R 402.1.2, based on the climate zone specified in Chapter 3.

R 402.1.3 R-value computation. Insulation material used in layers, such as framing cavity insulation or continuous insulation, shall be summed to compute the corresponding component R-value. The manufacturer’s settled R-value shall be used for blown-in insulation. Computed R-values shall not include an R-value for other building materials or air films. Where insulated siding is used for the purpose of complying with the continuous insulation requirements of Table R 402.1.2, the manufacturer’s labeled R-value for the insulated siding shall be reduced by R-0.6.

R 402.1.4 U-factor alternative. An assembly with a U-factor equal to or less than that specified in Table R 402.1.4 shall be an alternative to the R-value in Table R 402.1.2.
**RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

**R 402.1.5** Total UA alternative. Where the total building thermal envelope UA, the sum of U-factor times assembly area, is less than or equal to the total UA resulting from multiplying the U-factors in Table R402.1.4 by the same assembly area as in the proposed building, the building shall be considered to be in compliance with Table R402.1.2. The UA calculation shall be performed using a method consistent with the ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals and shall include the thermal bridging effects of framing materials. In addition to UA compliance, the SHGC requirements shall be met.

**R 402.2** Specific insulation requirements (Prescriptive). In addition to the requirements of Section R402.1, insulation shall meet the specific requirements of Sections R402.2.1 through R402.2.13.

> **R 402.2.1** Ceilings with attic spaces. Where Section R402.1.2 requires R-49 insulation in the ceiling, installing R-38 over 100 percent of the ceiling area requiring insulation shall satisfy the requirement for R-49 insulation wherever the full height of uncompressed R-38 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. This reduction shall not apply to the U-factor alternative approach in Section R402.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

> **R 402.2.2** Ceilings without attic spaces. Where Section R402.1.2 requires insulation R-values greater than R-30 in the ceiling and the design of the roof/ceiling assembly does not allow sufficient space for the required insulation, the minimum required insulation R-value for such roof/ceiling assemblies shall be R-30. Insulation shall extend over the top of the wall plate to the outer edge of such plate and shall not be compressed. This reduction of insulation from the requirements of Section R402.1.2 shall be limited to 500 square feet (46 m²) or 20 percent of the total insulated ceiling area, whichever is less. This reduction shall not apply to the U-factor alternative approach in Section R402.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

**R 402.2.3** Eave baffle. For air-permeable insulations in vented attics, a baffle shall be installed adjacent to soffit and eave vents. Baffles shall maintain an opening equal or greater than the size of the vent. The baffle shall extend over the top of the attic insulation. The baffle shall be permitted to be any solid material.

**R 402.2.4** Access hatches and doors. Access doors from conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces such as attics and crawl spaces shall be weatherstripped and insulated to a level equivalent to the insulation on the surrounding surfaces. Access that prevents damaging or compressing the insulation shall be provided to all equipment. Where loose-fill insulation is installed, a wood-framed or equivalent baffle or retainer shall be installed to prevent the loose-fill insulation from spilling into the living space when the attic access is opened. The baffle or retainer shall provide a permanent means of maintaining the installed R-value of the loose-fill insulation.

**Exception:** Vertical doors providing access from conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces that comply with the fenestration requirements of Table R402.1.2.

---

**TABLE R402.1.2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FENESTRATION U-FACTOR</th>
<th>SKYLIGHT U-FACTOR</th>
<th>GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC</th>
<th>CEILING R-VALUE</th>
<th>WOOD FRAME WALL R-VALUE</th>
<th>MASS WALL R-VALUE</th>
<th>FLOOR R-VALUE</th>
<th>BASEMENT WALL R-VALUE</th>
<th>SLAB R-VALUE &amp; DEPTH</th>
<th>CRAWL SPACE WALL R-VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>20 or 13+5</td>
<td>13/17</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>15/19</td>
<td>10, 2 ft</td>
<td>15/19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NR = Not Required.

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. R-values are minimums. U-factors and SHGC are maximums. Where insulation is installed in a cavity that is less than the label or design thickness of the insulation, the installed R-value of the insulation shall be not less than the R-value specified in the table.

b. The fenestration U-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.

c. “10/13” means R-10 continuous insulation on the interior or exterior of the home or R-13 cavity insulation on the interior of the basement wall.

“15/19” means R-15 continuous insulation on the interior or exterior of the home or R-19 cavity insulation at the interior of the basement wall. Alternatively, compliance with “15/19” shall be R-13 cavity insulation on the interior of the basement wall plus R-5 continuous insulation on the interior or exterior of the home.

d. R-5 insulation shall be provided under the full slab area of a heated slab in addition to the required slab edge insulation R-value for slabs as indicated in the table. The slab edge insulation for heated slabs shall not be required to extend below the slab.

e. There are no SHGC requirements in the Marine Zone.

f. Basement wall insulation is not required in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1.

g. A mass wall with sufficient insulation to fill the framing cavity and providing not less than an R-value of R-19.

h. The first value is cavity insulation, the second value is continuous insulation. Therefore, as an example, “13+5” means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 continuous insulation.

i. Mass walls shall be in accordance with Section R402.2.5. The second R-value applies where more than half of the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.

---

**TABLE R402.1.4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FENESTRATION U-FACTOR</th>
<th>SKYLIGHT U-FACTOR</th>
<th>CEILING U-FACTOR</th>
<th>FRAME WALL U-FACTOR</th>
<th>MASS WALL U-FACTOR</th>
<th>FLOOR U-FACTOR</th>
<th>BASEMENT WALL U-FACTOR</th>
<th>CRAWL SPACE U-FACTOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.026</td>
<td>0.045</td>
<td>0.056</td>
<td>0.029</td>
<td>0.042</td>
<td>0.042</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Nonfenestration U-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.

b. Mass walls shall be in accordance with Section R402.2.5. Where more than half of the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall U-factors shall not exceed 0.065.
R 402.2.5 Mass walls. Mass walls where used as a component of the building thermal envelope shall be one of the following:
1. Above-ground walls of concrete block, concrete, insulated concrete form, masonry cavity, brick but not brick veneer, adobe, compressed earth block, rammed earth, solid timber or solid logs.
2. Any wall having a heat capacity greater than or equal to 6 Btu/ft²·°F (123 kJ/m²·°K).

R 402.2.6 Steel-frame ceilings, walls and floors. Steel-frame ceilings, walls, and floors shall comply with the insulation requirements of Table R 402.2.6 or the U-factor requirements of Table R 402.1.4. The calculation of the U-factor for a steel-frame envelope assembly shall use a series-parallel path calculation method.

R 402.2.7 Walls with partial structural sheathing. Where Section R402.1.2 requires continuous insulation on exterior walls and structural sheathing covers 40 percent or less of the gross area of all exterior walls, the required continuous insulation R-value shall be permitted to be reduced by an amount necessary, but not more than R-3 to result in a consistent total sheathing thickness on areas of the walls covered by structural sheathing. This reduction shall not apply to the U-factor alternative in Section R 402.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section R 402.1.5.

R 402.2.8 Floors. Floor framing-cavity insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking.

Exception: As an alternative, the floor framing-cavity insulation shall be in contact with the topside of sheathing or continuous insulation installed on the bottom side of floor framing where combined with insulation that meets or exceeds the minimum wood frame wall R-value in Table R 402.1.2 and that extends from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members.

R 402.2.9 Basement walls. Walls associated with conditioned basements shall be insulated from the top of the basement wall down to 10 feet (3048 mm) below grade or to the basement floor, whichever is less. Walls associated with unconditioned basements shall comply with this requirement except where the floor overhead is insulated in accordance with Sections R 402.1.2 and R 402.2.8.

R 402.2.10 Slab-on-grade floors. Slab-on-grade floors with a floor surface less than 12 inches (305 mm) below grade shall be insulated in accordance with Table R 402.1.2. The insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab on the outside or inside of the foundation wall. Insulation located below grade shall be extended the distance provided in Table R 402.1.2 by any combination of vertical insulation, insulation extending under the slab or insulation extending out from the building. Insulation extending away from the building shall be protected by pavement or by not less than 10 inches (254 mm) of soil. The top edge of the insulation located between the interior wall and the edge of the interior slab shall be permitted to be cut at a 45-degree (0.79 rad) angle away from the exterior wall. Slab-edge insulation is not required in jurisdictions designated by the code official as having a very heavy termite infestation.

R 402.2.11 Crawl space walls. As an alternative to insulating floors over crawl spaces, crawl space walls shall be insulated provided that the crawl space is not vented to the outdoors. Crawl space wall insulation shall be permanently fastened to the wall and shall extend downward from the floor to the finished grade elevation and then vertically or horizontally for not less than an additional 24 inches (610 mm). Exposed earth in unvented crawl space foundations shall be covered with a continuous Class I vapor retarder in accordance with the International Building Code or International Residential Code, as applicable. Joists of the vapor retarder shall overlap by 6 inches (153 mm) and be sealed or taped. The edges of the vapor retarder shall extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) up stem walls and shall be attached to the stem walls.

R 402.2.6 Steel-frame ceilings, wall and floor insulation R-values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WOOD FRAME R-VALUE REQUIREMENT</th>
<th>COLD-FORMED STEEL-FRAME EQUIVALENT R-VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steel Truss Ceilingsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-30</td>
<td>R-38 or R-30 + 3 or R-26 + 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-38</td>
<td>R-49 or R-38 + 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-49</td>
<td>R-38 + 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel Joist Ceilingsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-30</td>
<td>R-38 in 2 x 4 or 2 x 6 or 2 x 8 R-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in any framing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-38</td>
<td>R-49 in 2 x 4 or 2 x 6 or 2 x 8 or 2 x 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel-Framed Wall, 16 inches on center</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-13</td>
<td>R-13 + 4.2 or R-21 + 2.8 or R-0 + 9.3 or R-15 + 3.8 or R-21 + 3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-13 + 3</td>
<td>R-0 + 11.2 or R-13 + 6.1 or R-15 + 5.7 or R-19 + 5.0 or R-21 + 4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-20</td>
<td>R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 8.9 or R-15 + 8.5 or R-19 + 7.8 or R-19 + 6.2 or R-21 + 7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-20 + 5</td>
<td>R-13 + 12.7 or R-15 + 12.3 or R-19 + 11.6 or R-21 + 11.5 or R-25 + 10.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-21</td>
<td>R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 9.5 or R-15 + 9.1 or R-19 + 8.4 or R-21 + 8.1 or R-25 + 7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel Framed Wall, 24 inches on center</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-13</td>
<td>R-0 + 9.3 or R-13 + 3.0 or R-15 + 2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-13 + 3</td>
<td>R-0 + 11.2 or R-13 + 4.9 or R-15 + 4.3 or R-19 + 3.5 or R-21 + 3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-20</td>
<td>R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 7.7 or R-15 + 7.1 or R-19 + 6.3 or R-21 + 5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-20 + 5</td>
<td>R-13 + 11.5 or R-15 + 10.9 or R-19 + 10.1 or R-21 + 9.7 or R-25 + 9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-21</td>
<td>R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 8.3 or R-15 + 7.7 or R-19 + 6.9 or R-21 + 6.5 or R-25 + 5.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The first value is cavity insulation R-value, the second value is continuous insulation R-value. Therefore, for example, “R-30+3” means R-30 cavity insulation plus R-3 continuous insulation.

b. Insulation exceeding the height of the framing shall cover the framing.
**RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

R 402.2.12 Masonry veneer. Insulation shall not be required on the horizontal portion of a foundation that supports a masonry veneer.

R 402.2.13 Sunroom insulation. Sunrooms enclosing conditioned space shall meet the insulation requirements of this code.

**Exception:** For sunrooms with thermal isolation, and enclosing conditioned space, the following exceptions to the insulation requirements of this code shall apply:

1. The minimum ceiling insulation R-value shall be R-24.
2. The minimum wall insulation R-value shall be R-13. Walls separating a sunroom with a thermal isolation from conditioned space shall comply with the building thermal envelope requirements of this code.

R 402.3 Fenestration (Prescriptive). In addition to the requirements of Section R 402, fenestration shall comply with Sections R 402.3.1 through R 402.3.5.

R 402.3.1 U-factor. A an area-weighted average of fenestration products shall be permitted to satisfy the U-factor requirements.

R 402.3.2 Glazed fenestration SHGC. An area-weighted average of fenestration products more than 50-percent glazed shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements.

Dynamic glazing shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements of Table R 402.1.2 provided that the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC is greater than or equal to 2.4, and the dynamic glazing is automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. Dynamic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall be prohibited.

**Exception:** Dynamic glazing shall not be required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher labeled SHGC comply with the requirements of Table R 402.1.2.

R 402.3.3 Glazed fenestration exemption. Not greater than 15 square feet (1.4 m²) of glazed fenestration per dwelling unit shall be exempt from the U-factor and SHGC requirements in Section R 402.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the U-factor alternative in Section R 402.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section R 402.1.5.

R 402.3.4 Opaque door exemption. One side-hinged opaque door assembly not greater than 24 square feet (2.22 m²) in area shall be exempt from the U-factor requirement in Section R 402.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the U-factor alternative in Section R 402.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section R 402.1.5.

R 402.3.5 Sunroom fenestration. Sunrooms enclosing conditioned space shall comply with the fenestration requirements of this code.

**Exception:** For sunrooms with thermal isolation and enclosing conditioned space, the fenestration U-factor shall not exceed 0.45 and the skylight U-factor shall not exceed 0.70.

New fenestration separating the sunroom with thermal isolation from conditioned space shall comply with the building thermal envelope requirements of this code.

R 402.4 Air leakage (Mandatory). The building thermal envelope shall be constructed to limit air leakage in accordance with the requirements of Sections R 402.4.1 through R 402.4.5.

R 402.4.1 Building thermal envelope. The building thermal envelope shall comply with Sections R 402.4.1.1 and R 402.4.1.2. The sealing methods between dissimilar materials shall allow for differential expansion and contraction.

R 402.4.1.1 Installation. The components of the building thermal envelope as indicated in Table R 402.4.1.1 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions and the criteria indicated in Table R 402.4.1.1, as applicable to the method of construction. Where required by the code official, an approved third party shall inspect all components and verify compliance.

R 402.4.1.2 Testing. The building or dwelling unit shall be tested and verified as having an air leakage rate not exceeding three air changes per hour. Testing shall be conducted in accordance with RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 and reported at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pascals). Where required by the code official, testing shall be conducted by an approved third party. A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the code official. Testing shall be performed at any time after creation of all penetrations of the building thermal envelope.

During testing:

1. Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed, beyond the intended weatherstripping or other infiltration control measures.
2. Dampers including exhaust, intake, makeup air, backdraft and flue dampers shall be closed, but not sealed beyond intended infiltration control measures.
3. Interior doors, where installed at the time of the test, shall be open.
4. Exterior or interior terminations for continuous ventilation systems shall be sealed.
5. Heating and cooling systems, where installed at the time of the test, shall be turned off.
6. Supply and return registers, where installed at the time of the test, shall be fully open.

R 402.4.2 Fireplaces. New wood-burning fireplaces shall have tight-fitting flue dampers or doors, and outdoor combustion air. Where using tight-fitting doors on factory-built fireplaces listed and labeled in accordance with UL 127, the doors shall be tested and listed for the fireplace.

R 402.4.3 Fenestration air leakage. Windows, skylights and sliding glass doors shall have an air infiltration rate of not greater than 0.3 cfm per square foot (1.5 L/s/m²), and
for swinging doors, not greater than 0.5 cfm per square foot (2.6 L/s/m²), when tested in accordance with NFRC 400 or AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 by an accredited, independent laboratory and listed and labeled by the manufacturer.

**Exception:** Site-built windows, skylights and doors.

**R402.4.4 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances.** Where open combustion air ducts provide combustion air to open combustion fuel-burning appliances, the appliances and combustion air opening shall be located outside the building thermal envelope or enclosed in a room that is isolated from inside the thermal envelope. Such rooms shall be sealed and insulated in accordance with the envelope requirements of Table R402.1.2, where the walls, floors and ceilings shall meet not less than the basement wall R-value requirement. The door into the room shall be fully gasketed and any water lines and ducts in the room insulated in accordance with Section R403. The combustion air duct shall be insulated where it passes through conditioned space to an R-value of not less than R-8.

**Exceptions:**
1. Direct vent appliances with both intake and exhaust pipes installed continuous to the outside.
2. Fireplaces and stoves complying with Section R402.4.2 and Section R1006 of the International Residential Code.

**R402.4.5 Recessed lighting.** Recessed luminaires installed in the building thermal envelope shall be sealed to limit air leakage between conditioned and unconditioned spaces. Recessed luminaires shall be IC-rated and labeled as having an air leakage rate of not greater than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf (75 Pa). Recessed luminaires shall be sealed with a gasket or caulked between the housing and the interior wall or ceiling covering.

**R402.5 Maximum fenestration U-factor and SHGC (Mandatory).** The area-weighted average maximum fenestration U-factor permitted using tradeoffs from Section R402.1.5 shall be 0.48 in Climate Zones 4 and 5 and 0.75 in Climate Zones 4 through 8 for skylights.

**SECTION R403 SYSTEMS**

**R403.1 Controls (Mandatory).** Not less than one thermostat shall be provided for each separate heating and cooling system.

**R403.1.1 Programmable thermostat.** The thermostat controlling the primary heating or cooling system of the dwelling unit shall be capable of controlling the heating and cooling system on a daily schedule to maintain different temperature setpoints at different times of the day. This thermostat shall include the capability to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain zone temperatures of not less than 55°F (13°C) to not greater than 85°F (29°C). The thermostat shall be programmed initially by the manufacturer with a heating temperature setpoint of not greater than 70°F (21°C) and a cooling temperature setpoint of not less than 78°F (26°C).

**R403.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat (Mandatory).** Heat pumps having supplementary electric-resistance heat shall have controls that, except during defrost, prevent supplemental heat operation when the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load.

**R403.1.3 Continuously burning pilot lights.** The natural gas systems and equipment listed here are not permitted to have continuously burning pilot lights:
1. Fan-type central furnaces.
3. Pool heaters.
4. Spa heaters.
5. Fireplaces.

**R403.2 Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback.** Hot water boilers that supply heat to the building through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that decreases the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.

**R403.3 Ducts.** Ducts and air handlers shall be installed in accordance with Sections R403.3.1 through R403.3.7.

**R403.3.1 Insulation (Prescriptive).** Supply and return ducts in attics shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than R-8 for ducts 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter and larger and not less than R-6 for ducts smaller than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter. Supply and return ducts in other portions of the building shall be insulated to not less than R-6 for ducts 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter and not less than R-4.2 for ducts smaller than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter.

**Exception:** Ducts or portions thereof located completely inside the building thermal envelope.

**R403.3.2 Sealing (Mandatory).** Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with either the International Mechanical Code or International Residential Code, as applicable.

**R403.3.2.1 Sealed air handler.** Air handlers shall have a manufacturer’s designation for an air leakage of not greater than 2 percent of the design airflow rate when tested in accordance with ASHRAE 193.
## Table R402.4.1.1
### Air Barrier and Insulation Installation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPONENT</th>
<th>AIR BARRIER CRITERIA</th>
<th>INSULATION INSTALLATION CRITERIA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General requirements</td>
<td>A continuous air barrier shall be installed in the building envelope. The exterior thermal envelope contains a continuous air barrier. Breaks or joints in the air barrier shall be sealed.</td>
<td>Air-permeable insulation shall not be used as a sealing material.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceiling/attic</td>
<td>The air barrier in any dropped ceiling or soffit shall be aligned with the insulation and any gaps in the air barrier shall be sealed. Access openings, drop down stairs or knee wall doors to unconditioned attic spaces shall be sealed.</td>
<td>The insulation in any dropped ceiling/soffit shall be aligned with the air barrier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walls</td>
<td>The junction of the foundation and sill plate shall be sealed. The junction of the top plate and the top of exterior walls shall be sealed. Knee walls shall be sealed.</td>
<td>Cavities within corners and headers of frame walls shall be insulated by completely filling the cavity with a material having a thermal resistance, R-value, of not less than R-3 per inch. Exterior thermal envelope insulation for framed walls shall be installed in substantial contact and continuous alignment with the air barrier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows, skylights and doors</td>
<td>The space between framing and skylights, and the jambs of windows and doors, shall be sealed.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim joists</td>
<td>Rim joists shall include the air barrier.</td>
<td>Rim joists shall be insulated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floors, including cantilevered floors and floors above garages</td>
<td>The air barrier shall be installed at any exposed edge of insulation.</td>
<td>Floor framing cavity insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of subfloor decking. Alternatively, floor framing cavity insulation shall be in contact with the top side of sheathing, or continuous insulation installed on the underside of floor framing; and shall extend from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crawl space walls</td>
<td>Exposed earth in unvented crawl spaces shall be covered with a Class I vapor retarder with overlapping joints taped.</td>
<td>Crawl space insulation, where provided instead of floor insulation, shall be permanently attached to the walls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shafts, penetrations</td>
<td>Duct shafts, utility penetrations, and flue shafts opening to exterior or unconditioned space shall be sealed.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrow cavities</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Batts to be installed in narrow cavities shall be cut to fit or narrow cavities shall be filled with insulation that on installation readily conforms to the available cavity space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garage separation</td>
<td>Air sealing shall be provided between the garage and conditioned spaces.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recessed lighting</td>
<td>Recessed light fixtures installed in the building thermal envelope shall be sealed to the finished surface.</td>
<td>Recessed light fixtures installed in the building thermal envelope shall be air tight and IC rated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plumbing and wiring</td>
<td>In exterior walls, batt insulation shall be cut neatly to fit around wiring and plumbing, or insulation that on installation readily conforms to available space, shall extend behind piping and wiring.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower/tub on exterior wall</td>
<td>The air barrier installed at exterior walls adjacent to showers and tubs shall separate the wall from the shower or tub.</td>
<td>Exterior walls adjacent to showers and tubs shall be insulated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical/phone box on exterior walls</td>
<td>The air barrier shall be installed behind electrical and communication boxes. Alternatively, air-sealed boxes shall be installed.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HVAC register boots</td>
<td>HVAC supply and return register boots that penetrate building thermal envelope shall be sealed to the subfloor, wall covering or ceiling penetrated by the boot.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concealed sprinklers</td>
<td>Where required to be sealed, concealed fire sprinklers shall only be sealed in a manner that is recommended by the manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*a. Inspection of log walls shall be in accordance with the provisions of ICC 400.*
R 403.3.3 Duct testing (Mandatory). Ducts shall be pressure tested to determine air leakage by one of the following methods:

1. Rough-in test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure if installed at the time of the test. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

Exception: A duct air-leakage test shall not be required where the ducts and air handlers are located entirely within the building thermal envelope.

A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the code official.

R 403.3.4 Duct leakage (Prescriptive). The total leakage of the ducts, where measured in accordance with Section R 403.3.3, shall be as follows:

1. Rough-in test: The total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m²) of conditioned floor area where the air handler is installed at the time of the test. Where the air handler is not installed at the time of the test, the total leakage shall be less than or equal to 3 cubic feet per minute (85 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m²) of conditioned floor area.

2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m²) of conditioned floor area.

R 403.3.5 Building cavities (Mandatory). Building framing cavities shall not be used as ducts or plenums.

R 403.3.6 Ducts buried within ceiling insulation. Where supply and return air ducts are partially or completely buried in ceiling insulation, such ducts shall comply with all of the following:

1. The supply and return ducts shall have an insulation R-value not less than R-8.

2. At all points along each duct, the sum of the ceiling insulation R-value against and above the top of the duct, and against and below the bottom of the duct, shall be not less than R-19, excluding the R-value of the duct insulation.

R 403.3.6.1 Effective R-value of deeply buried ducts. Where using a simulated energy performance analysis, sections of ducts that are: installed in accordance with Section R 403.3.6; located directly on, or within 5.5 inches (140 mm) of the ceiling; surrounded with blown-in attic insulation having an R-value of R-30 or greater and located such that the top of the duct is not less than 3.5 inches (89 mm) below the top of the insulation, shall be considered as having an effective duct insulation R-value of R-25.

R 403.3.7 Ducts located in conditioned space. For ducts to be considered as inside a conditioned space, such ducts shall comply with either of the following:

1. The duct system shall be located completely within the continuous air barrier and within the building thermal envelope.

2. The ducts shall be buried within ceiling insulation in accordance with Section R 403.3.6 and all of the following conditions shall exist:

   1. The air handler is located completely within the continuous air barrier and within the building thermal envelope.

   2. The duct leakage, as measured either by a rough-in test of the ducts or a post-construction total system leakage test to outside the building thermal envelope in accordance with Section R 403.3.4, is less than or equal to 1.5 cubic feet per minute (42.5 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m²) of conditioned floor area served by the duct system.

2.3. The ceiling insulation R-value installed against and above the insulated duct is greater than or equal to the proposed ceiling insulation R-value, less the R-value of the insulation on the duct.

R 403.4 Mechanical system piping insulation (Mandatory). Mechanical system piping capable of carrying fluids greater than 105°F (41°C) or less than 55°F (13°C) shall be insulated to an R-value of R-3.

R 403.4.1 Protection of piping insulation. Piping insulation exposed to weather shall be protected from damage, including that caused by sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind. The protection shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall be prohibited.

R 403.5 Service hot water systems. Energy conservation measures for service hot water systems shall be in accordance with Sections R 403.5.1 through R 403.5.4.

R 403.5.1 Heated water circulation and temperature maintenance systems (Mandatory). Heated water circulation systems shall be in accordance with Section R 403.5.1.1. Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section R 403.5.1.2. Automatic controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be accessible. Manual controls shall be readily accessible.

R 403.5.1.1 Circulation systems. Heated water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe or a cold water supply pipe. Gravity and thermosyphon circulation systems shall be prohibited. Controls for circulating hot water system pumps shall start the pump based on the identification of a demand for hot water within the occupancy. The controls shall automatically turn off the pump when the water in the circulation loop is at the desired temperature and when there is no demand for hot water.
**RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

**R403.5.1.2 Heat trace systems.** Electric heat trace systems shall comply with IEEE 515.1 or UL 515. Controls for such systems shall automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy.

**R403.5.2 Demand recirculation water systems.** Demand recirculation water systems shall have controls that comply with both of the following:

1. The controls shall start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.
2. The controls shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold water piping to not greater than 104°F (40°C).

**R403.5.3 Hot water pipe insulation (Prescriptive).** Insulation for hot water piping with a thermal resistance, R-value, of not less than R-3 shall be applied to the following:

1. Piping \( \frac{3}{4} \) inch (19.1 mm) and larger in nominal diameter.
2. Piping serving more than one dwelling unit.
3. Piping located outside the conditioned space.
4. Piping from the water heater to a distribution manifold.
5. Piping located under a floor slab.
7. Supply and return piping in recirculation systems other than demand recirculation systems.

**R403.5.4 Drain water heat recovery units.** Drain water heat recovery units shall comply with CSA B55.2. Drain water heat recovery units shall be tested in accordance with CSA B55.1. Potable water-side pressure loss of drain water heat recovery units shall be less than 3 psi (20.7 kPa) for individual units connected to one or two showers. Potable water-side pressure loss of drain water heat recovery units shall be less than 2 psi (13.8 kPa) for individual units connected to three or more showers.

**R403.6 Mechanical ventilation (Mandatory).** The building shall be provided with ventilation that complies with the requirements of the International Residential Code or International Mechanical Code, as applicable, or with other approved means of ventilation. Outdoor air intakes and exhausts shall have automatic or gravity dampers that close when the ventilation system is not operating.

**R403.6.1 Whole-house mechanical ventilation system fan efficacy.** Fans used to provide whole-house mechanical ventilation shall meet the efficacy requirements of Table R403.6.1.

**Exception:** Where an air handler that is integral to tested and listed HVAC equipment is used to provide whole-house mechanical ventilation, the air handler shall be powered by an electronically commutated motor.

**R403.7 Equipment sizing and efficiency rating (Mandatory).** Heating and cooling equipment shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S based on building loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J or other approved heating and cooling calculation methodologies. New or replacement heating and cooling equipment shall have an efficiency rating equal to or greater than the minimum required by federal law for the geographic location where the equipment is installed.

**R403.8 Systems serving multiple dwelling units (Mandatory).** Systems serving multiple dwelling units shall comply with Sections C403 and C404 of the International Energy Conservation Code—Commercial Provisions instead of Section R403.

**R403.9 Snow melt and ice system controls (Mandatory).** Snow- and ice-melting systems, supplied through energy service to the building, shall comply with Sections R403.9.1 and R403.9.2.

**R403.9.1 Controls.** Snow melt and ice systems shall include automatic controls capable of shutting off the system when the pavement temperature is greater than 50°F (10°C) and precipitation is not falling, and an automatic or manual control that will allow shutoff when the outdoor temperature is greater than 40°F (4.8°C).

**R403.9.2 Renewable energy offset.** Energy use by snow and ice melt systems shall be offset by on-site renewable energy generation equipment designed to provide 34,425 BTUs per square foot of installed ice melt system per year. Plans shall be submitted that detail the type, size and location of the on-site renewable energy generation equipment.

**Note:** A separate building permit is required for on-site renewable energy generation equipment.

**R403.10 Pools and permanent spa energy consumption (Mandatory).** The energy consumption of pools and permanent spas shall be in accordance with Sections R403.10.1 through R403.10.3.

**R403.10.1 Heaters.** The electric power to heaters shall be controlled by a readily accessible on-off switch that is an integral part of the heater mounted on the exterior of the heater, or external to and within 3 feet (914 mm) of the heater. Operation of such switch shall not change the setting of the heater thermostat. Such switches shall be in addition to a circuit breaker for the power to the heater. Heated pools shall be heated by solar thermal or other equipment that does not rely directly or indirectly on the burning of fossil fuels or shall have their energy use offset by on-site renewable energy generation equipment equivalent to the energy use of the swimming pool.

**Exceptions:**

1. Unheated pools.
2. Pools having less than 200 square feet (18.6 m²) of water surface area are exempt from the requirements to provide renewable energy.
**Section R403.13: Spas**

**Spas (Mandatory).** The energy consumption of electric-powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of APSP 14.

**Exceptions:**
1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.

**Covers.** Outdoor heated pools and outdoor permanent spas shall be provided with a vapor-retardant cover or other approved vapor-retardant means.

**Exception:** Where more than 75 percent of the energy for heating, computed over an operation season of not less than three calendar months, is from a heat pump or an on-site renewable energy system, covers or other vapor-retardant means shall not be required.

**Filters.** Swimming pool filters shall be cartridge-type filters.

**Pumps.** Swimming pool pumps shall be multi-speed pumps.

**Load calculations.** For the purpose of calculating the energy use of swimming pools, the following are assumed:

1. Swimming pool season.
   1.1. Outdoor pools: 3 months.
   1.2. Indoor pools: 12 months.
2. Pool heating temperature: 82°F (28°C) or less.
3. On-site renewable energy requirements: 29,000 BTUs per square foot of pool surface area per year.

**Note:** This section is not intended to limit the season or temperature of swimming pools.

**Portable spas (Mandatory).** The energy consumption of electric-powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of APSP 14.

**Residential pools and permanent residential spas.** Residential swimming pools and permanent residential spas that are accessory to detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses three stories or less in height above grade plane and that are available only to the household and its guests shall be in accordance with ASPP 15.

**Spas (Mandatory).** Any energy use by indoor or outdoor spas must be offset by on-site renewable energy generation equivalent to the energy use by the spa. Plans must show the annual energy use of the spa, the calculation method used to determine the expected energy use, and the on-site renewable energy system(s) that will be used to offset the energy used by the spa. All spas must be equipped with an insulated cover that is listed to provide a minimum R-value of at least 12.

**Exception:** Spas and hot tubs that have been tested and listed for compliance with the requirements of the California Energy Commission (CEC) Title 20 [standby power for portable electric spas shall be not greater than 5(V^2/3) watts where V = the total volume of the spa in gallons], and are less than 64 square feet (5.9 m^2) in surface area shall be exempted from the requirement to offset their energy usage by on-site renewable energy generation. Spas larger than 64 square feet (5.9 m^2) in surface area that are certified to meet the requirements of the CEC shall offset their requirements at the rate of 140,000 BTUs per square foot per year.

**Design criteria for spas.** The requirements of this section apply to spas that do not meet the exception in Section R403.13.

**Spa season:**
1. On-site renewable energy requirements: 430,000 BTUs per square foot per year

### ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS

**Section R404**

**Lighting equipment (Mandatory).** Not less than 90 percent of the permanently installed lighting fixtures shall contain only high-efficacy light sources.

**Exceptions:**
1. Solar-powered lamps not connected to any electrical service.
2. Luminaires controlled by a motion sensor.

**Electric vehicle (EV) charging for new construction.** The building shall be provided with electric vehicle (EV) charging in accordance with this section and the National Electrical Code (NFPA 70). Where parking spaces are added or modified without an increase in building size, only the new parking spaces are subject to this requirement. The number of parking spaces can be determined by actual spaces provided or consistent with Boulder’s Municipal Code, Title 9: Land Use Code, Chapter 9: Development Standards, 9-9-6: Parking Standards.

**One- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.** Each dwelling unit with a dedicated attached or detached garage shall be provided with at least one electric vehicle ready space. The branch circuit shall be identified as "EV Ready" in the service panel or subpanel directory, and the termination location shall be marked as “EV Ready.”

**Group-R occupancies.** Group-R occupancies with three or more dwelling units and/or sleeping units shall be provided with electric vehicle charging in accordance with Table R404.2. Calculations for the number of spaces shall be rounded up to the nearest whole number.
TABLE R404.2.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBER OF EV READY SPACES</th>
<th>NUMBER OF EV CAPABLE SPACES</th>
<th>NUMBER OF EVSE INSTALLED SPACES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-25 spaces</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 25 spaces</td>
<td>10% of spaces</td>
<td>40% of spaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5% of spaces (minimum one dual port charging station)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**R 404.2.3 Identification.** Construction documents shall designate all EV capable spaces, EV ready spaces and electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE) installed spaces and indicate the locations of conduit and termination points serving them. The circuits or spaces reserved for the circuits for EV capable spaces, EV ready spaces and EVSE installed spaces shall be clearly identified in the panel or subpanel directory. The conduit for EV capable spaces shall be clearly identified at both the panel or subpanel and the termination point at the parking space.

**R 404.2.4 Accessible parking.** Where new EVSE installed spaces and/or new EV ready spaces and new accessible parking, as defined by the City of Boulder Building Code, Chapter 11, are both provided, parking facilities shall be designed so that at least one accessible parking space shall be EV ready or EVSE installed.

---

**SECTION R405 RESERVED**

**SECTION R406 ENERGY RATING INDEX COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVE**

**R 406.1 Scope.** This section establishes criteria for compliance using an Energy Rating Index (ERI) analysis.

**R 406.2 Mandatory requirements.** Compliance with this section requires that the provisions identified in Sections R401 through R404 indicated as “Mandatory” and Section R403.5.3 be met. The building thermal envelope shall be greater than or equal to levels of efficiency in Table 402.1.2 or 402.1.4.

**Exception:** Supply and return ducts not completely inside the building thermal envelope shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than R-6.

**R 406.3 Energy Rating Index.** The Energy Rating Index (ERI) shall be determined in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301 except for buildings covered by the International Residential Code.

Energy used to recharge or refuel a vehicle used for transportation on roads that are not on the building site shall not be included in the ERI reference design or the rated design.

**R 406.4 ERI-based compliance.** Compliance based on an ERI analysis requires that the rated design be shown to have an ERI less than or equal to the appropriate value indicated in Table R406.4 and Figure R406.4 when compared to the ERI reference design.

---

**TABLE R406.4 MAXIMUM ENERGY RATING INDEX**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA</th>
<th>ENERGY RATING INDEXa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>500 to 1,499</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,500 to 2,499</td>
<td>50 - (SQFT floor area - 1,500) * 0.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,500 to 2,999</td>
<td>42 - (SQFT floor area - 4,000) * 0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 3,000</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**R 406.4.1 Renewable energy.** Renewable energy systems may contribute to compliance using the ERI analysis of Section R406.4.

**R 406.4.2 On-site renewable energy.** Renewable energy systems used for compliance with Section 406.4 must be permanently installed on the property of the building.

**Exceptions:**

1. **Offsite renewable energy.** The code official shall have the authority to approve the purchase of an off-site solar subscription to meet the requirements of Section R406.4 where meeting the required ERI on the property of the building is technically infeasible, which is a condition that exists where the following requirements have been met:

   a. It has been demonstrated to the code official that it is not possible to install an on-site solar array that is unshaded for more than 70 percent of daylight hours annually.

   b. The building has demonstrated an ERI of 50 or less for new construction without on-site renewable energy production or 60 or less for alterations without on-site renewable energy production.

   c. The submittal documents for such request shall include an ERI compliance report that includes the size and annual kWh production of the hypothetical on-site renewable energy system that would be required to achieve an ERI score of 0.

   The property of the building shall be identified in the contract as the physical location to which the subscription is attributed.

2. **Energy impact offset fund.** Where meeting the required ERI on the property of the building is technically infeasible and off-site solar subscriptions are unavailable, the code official shall have the authority to approve a one-time contribution to the City of Boulder’s Energy Impact Offset Fund equal to or greater than the value calculated in accordance with Equation 4-1, which is reasonably and approximately equivalent to the

---

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc. has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym "ICC" and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
energy offset that would be achieved through the original requirements of R406.4.2, Exception 1, Offsite Renewable Energy.

\[ EIO = AP \times 20 \text{ years} \times $0.0216 \]  
*(Equation 4-1)*

where:

- \( EIO \) = Energy impact offset.
- \( AP \) = Annual production in kWh/yr of the hypothetical on-site renewable system required to achieve the building’s ERI score.

R465 Verification by approved agency. Verification of compliance with Section R406 shall be completed by an approved third party.

R406 Documentation. Documentation of the software used to determine the ERI and the parameters for the residential building shall be in accordance with Sections R406.6.1 through R406.6.3.

R406.6.1 Compliance software tools. Software tools used for determining ERI shall be Approved Software Rating Tools in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301.

R406.6.2 Compliance report. Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the ERI of the rated design complies with Sections R406.3 and R406.4. The compliance documentation shall include the following information:

1. Address or other identification of the residential building.
2. An inspection checklist documenting the building component characteristics of the rated design. The inspection checklist shall show results for both the ERI reference design and the rated design, and shall document all inputs entered by the user necessary to reproduce the results.
3. Name of individual completing the compliance report.
4. Name and version of the compliance software tool.

**Exception:** Where an otherwise identical building model is offered in multiple orientations, compliance for any orientation shall be permitted by documenting that the building meets the performance requirements in each of the four (north, east, south and west) cardinal orientations.

R406.6.3 Additional documentation. The code official shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the ERI reference design.
2. A certification signed by the builder providing the building component characteristics of the rated design.
3. Documentation of the actual values used in the software calculations for the rated design.

R406.6.4 Specific approval. Performance analysis tools meeting the applicable sections of Section R406 shall be approved. Documentation demonstrating the approval of performance analysis tools in accordance with Section R406.6.1 shall be provided.

R406.6.5 Input values. Where calculations require input values not specified by Sections R402, R403 and R404, those input values shall be taken from RESNET/ICC 301.

**SECTION R407 SOLAR READINESS**

R407.1 General. New detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses with not less than 600 square feet (55.74 m²) of roof area oriented between 110 degrees and 270 degrees true north shall comply with this section.

**Exceptions:**

1. New residential buildings with a permanently installed on-site renewable energy system.
2. A building with a solar-ready zone that is shaded for more than 70 percent of daylight hours annually.

R407.2 Construction document requirements. Construction documents shall indicate the solar-ready zone.

R407.3 Solar-ready zone area. The total solar-ready zone area shall be not less than 300 square feet (27.87 m²), exclusive of mandatory access or setback areas as required by the International Fire Code. New townhouses three stories or less in height above grade plane and with a total floor area less than or equal to 2,000 square feet (185.8 m²) per dwelling shall have a solar-ready zone area of not less than 150 square feet (13.94 m²). The solar-ready zone shall be composed of areas not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in width and not less than 80 square feet (7.43 m²), exclusive of access or setback areas as required by the International Fire Code.

R407.3.1 Obstructions. Solar-ready zones shall be free from obstructions, including but not limited to vents, chimneys and roof-mounted equipment.

R407.3.2 Roof load documentation. The structural design loads for roof dead load and roof live load shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents.

R407.4 Interconnection pathway. Construction documents shall indicate pathways for routing of conduit or plumbing.
from the solar-ready zone to the electrical service panel or service hot water system.

**R 407.5 Electrical service reserved space.** The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow installation of a dual pole circuit breaker for future solar electric installation and shall be labeled “For Future Solar Electric.” The reserved space shall be positioned at the opposite (load) end from the input feeder location or main circuit location.

**R 407.6 Construction documentation certificate.** A permanent certificate, indicating the solar-ready zone and other requirements of this section, shall be posted near the electrical distribution panel, water heater or other conspicuous location by the builder or registered design professional.
CHAPTER 5 [RE]
EXISTING BUILDINGS

SECTION R501
GENERAL

R 501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the alteration, repair, addition and change of occupancy of existing buildings and structures.

R 501.1.1 Additions, alterations, or repairs: General. Additions, alterations, or repairs to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall comply with Section R 502, R 503 or R 504. Unaltered portions of the existing building or building supply system shall not be required to comply with this code.

R 501.2 Existing buildings. Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, alteration or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing building or building system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code.

R 501.3 Maintenance. Buildings and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices and systems that are required by this code shall be maintained in conformance to the code edition under which installed. The owner or the owner’s authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of buildings and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of energy conservation, fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.


R 501.4.1 Consecutive permits. Any two or more building permits for the same dwelling unit that are applied for in any 24-month period shall be considered as one permit for the purpose of determining and meeting the requirements of Section R 501.4.

Exceptions: Permits issued for repairs only.

R 501.5 New and replacement materials. Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for repairs, provided that hazards to life, health or property are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not allow their use in buildings of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

R 501.6 Historic buildings. Provisions of this code relating to the construction, repair, alteration, restoration and movement of structures, and change of occupancy shall not be mandatory for historic buildings provided that a report has been submitted to the code official and signed by the owner, a registered design professional, or a representative of the State Historic Preservation Office or the historic preservation authority having jurisdiction, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the building.

SECTION R502
ADDITIONS

R 502.1 General. Additions to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portion of the existing building or building system to comply with this code. Additions shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing building systems. Additions shall be in accordance with Section R 502.1.1. Additions with more than 1,000 square feet of conditioned floor area shall also comply with Section R 502.1.2.

R 502.1.1 Prescriptive compliance. Additions shall comply with Sections R 502.1.1.1 through R 502.1.1.4.

R 502.1.1.1 Building envelope. New building envelope assemblies that are part of the addition shall comply with Sections R 402.1, R 402.2, R 402.3.1 through R 402.3.5, and R 402.4.

Exception: Where unconditioned space is changed to conditioned space, the building envelope of the addition shall comply where the Total UA, as determined in Section R 402.1.5, of the existing building and the addition, and any alterations that are part of the project, is less than or equal to the Total UA generated for the existing building.
**EXISTING BUILDINGS**

**R 502.1.1.2 Heating and cooling systems.** New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the addition shall comply with Section R 403.

*Exception:* Where ducts from an existing heating and cooling system are extended to an addition, duct systems with less than 40 linear feet (12.19 m) in unconditioned spaces shall not be required to be tested in accordance with Section R 403.3.3.

**R 502.1.1.3 Service hot water systems.** New service hot water systems that are part of the addition shall comply with Section R 403.5.

**R 502.1.1.4 Lighting.** New lighting systems that are part of the addition shall comply with Section R 404.1.

**R 502.1.2 ERI compliance.** Additions greater than 1,000 square feet shall have an ERI in accordance with one of the following:

1. Demonstrate that the rated design of the altered building has an ERI less than or equal to 50.
2. Demonstrate that the ERI of the rated design for the altered building is not less than 30 percent lower than the ERI of the rated design for the building before the addition, and not higher than an ERI of 85.

**SECTION R 503 ALTERATIONS**

**R 503.1 General.** Alterations to any building or structure shall comply with the requirements of this section. Alterations shall be such that the existing building or structure is not less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing building or structure was prior to the alteration.

Alterations shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing building systems. Alterations shall be such that the existing building or structure does not use more energy than the existing building or structure prior to the alteration. Alterations to existing buildings shall comply with Sections R 503.1.1 through R 503.2. Level 3 alterations shall also comply with Section R 503.3. Level 4 alterations shall also comply with Section R 503.4.

**R 503.1.1 Building envelope.** Building envelope assemblies that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section R 402.1.2 or R 402.1.4, Sections R 402.2.1 through R 402.2.13, R 402.3.1, R 402.3.2, R 402.4.3 and R 402.4.5.

*Exception:* The following alterations shall not be required to comply with the requirements for new construction provided that the energy use of the building is not increased:

1. Storm windows installed over existing fenestration.
2. Existing ceiling, wall or floor cavities exposed during construction provided that these cavities are filled with insulation.
3. Construction where the existing roof, wall or floor cavity is not exposed.
4. Roof re-cover.
5. Roofs without insulation in the cavity and where the sheathing or insulation is exposed during reroofing shall be insulated either above or below the sheathing.
6. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single pane fenestration assemblies to reduce solar heat gain provided that the code does not require the glazing or fenestration assembly to be replaced.

**R 503.1.1.1 Replacement fenestration.** Where some or all of an existing fenestration unit is replaced with a new fenestration product, including sash and glazing, the replacement fenestration unit shall meet the applicable requirements for U-factor and SHGC as specified in Table R 402.1.2. Where more than one replacement fenestration unit is to be installed, an area-weighted average of the U-factor, SHGC or both of all replacement fenestration units shall be an alternative that can be used to show compliance.

**R 503.1.2 Heating and cooling systems.** New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section R 403.

*Exception:* Where ducts from an existing heating and cooling system are extended, duct systems with less than 40 linear feet (12.19 m) in unconditioned spaces shall not be required to be tested in accordance with Section R 403.3.3.

**R 503.1.3 Service hot water systems.** New service hot water systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section R 403.5.

**R 503.1.4 Lighting.** New lighting systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section R 404.1.

*Exception:* Alterations that replace less than 50 percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such alterations do not increase the installed interior lighting power.

**R 503.2 Change in space conditioning.** Any nonconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become conditioned space shall be required to be brought into full compliance with this code.

*Exception:* Where the annual energy cost of the proposed design is permitted to be 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise allowed by Section R 406.

**R 503.3 Level 3 alteration.** Where the building undergoes a Level 3 alteration, the building shall have an ERI in accordance with one of the following:

1. Demonstrate that the rated design of the altered building has an ERI less than or equal to 50.
2. Demonstrate that the ERI of the rated design for the altered building is not less than 30 percent lower than the ERI of the rated design for the building before the alteration, and not higher than an ERI of 85.

R503.4 Level 4 alteration. Where the building undergoes a Level 4 alteration, the building shall comply with Section R406 as new construction. Rated designs are permitted to be 10 percent greater than allowed by Section R406.4.

SECTION R504
REPAIRS

R504.1 General. Buildings, structures and parts thereof shall be repaired in compliance with Section R501.3 and this section. Work on nondamaged components necessary for the required repair of damaged components shall be considered to be part of the repair and shall not be subject to the requirements for alterations in this chapter. Routine maintenance required by Section R501.3, ordinary repairs exempt from permit, and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for repairs in this section.

R504.2 Application. For the purposes of this code, the following shall be considered to be repairs:

1. Glass-only replacements in an existing sash and frame.
2. Roof repairs.
3. Repairs where only the bulb, ballast or both within the existing luminaires in a space are replaced provided that the replacement does not increase the installed interior lighting power.

SECTION R505
CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

R505.1 General. Spaces undergoing a change in occupancy that would result in an increase in demand for either fossil fuel or electrical energy shall comply with this code.

R505.2 General. Any space that is converted to a dwelling unit or portion thereof from another use or occupancy shall comply with this code.

Exception: Where ERI-based compliance in Section R406.4 is used to comply with this section, the building shall comply with Section R406 as new construction. Rated designs are permitted to be 10 percent greater than allowed by Section R406.4.
CHAPTER 6 [RE]
REFERENCED STANDARDS

User note:

About this chapter: This code contains numerous references to standards promulgated by other organizations that are used to provide requirements for materials and methods of construction. Chapter 6 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in this code. These standards, in essence, are part of this code to the extent of the reference to the standard.

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section R107

AAMA
American Architectural Manufacturers Association
1827 Walden Office Square
Suite 550
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268

R402.4.3

ACCA
Air Conditioning Contractors of America
2800 Shirlington Road, Suite 300
Arlington, VA 22206

R403.7

Manual S— 14: Residential Equipment Selection
R403.7

APSP
The Association of Pool & Spa Professionals
2111 Eisenhower Avenue, Suite 500
Alexandria, VA 22314

R403.11

R403.12

ASHRAE
ASHRAE
1791 Tullie Circle NE
Atlanta, GA 30329

ASHRAE — 2017: ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals
R402.1.5

R403.2.1

ASTM
ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

R303.1.4.1
REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASTM—continued

E 283—04(2012): Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen
R 402.4.4

E 779—10: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization
R 402.4.1.2

R 402.4.1.2

CSA

CSA Group
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road
Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

R 402.4.3

R 403.5.4

CSA B55.2—2015: Drain Water Heat Recovery Units
R 403.5.4

DASMA

Door & Access Systems Manufacturers Association
1300 Sumner Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851

105—2016: Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Air Infiltration of Garage Doors and Rolling Doors
R 303.1.3

HVI

Home Ventilating Institute
1000 North Rand Road, Suite 214
Wauconda, IL 60084

916—09: Airflow Test Procedure
Table R 403.6.1

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
500 New Jersey Avenue NW
6th Floor
Washington, DC 20001

R 403.11

R 403.12

IBC—18: International Building Code®
R 201.3, R 303.1.1, R 303.2, R 402.1.1, R 501.4

ICC 400—17: Standard on the Design and Construction of Log Structures
R 402.1, Table R 402.5.1.1

IEBC—18: International Existing Building Code®
R 501.4

R 101.4.1, R 403.8

Table R 406.4

R 406.2

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym "ICC" and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
REFERENCED STANDARDS

IECC — 06: 2006 International Energy Conservation Code®
R202
IFC — 18: International Fire Code®
R201.3, R501.4
IFGC — 18: International Fuel Gas Code®
R201.3, R501.4
IMC — 18: International Mechanical Code®
R201.3, R403.3.2, R403.3.6, R403.6, R501.4
IPC — 18: International Plumbing Code®
R201.3, R501.4
IPSDC — 18: International Private Sewage Disposal Code®
R501.4
IPMC — 18: International Property Maintenance Code®
R501.4
IRC — 18: International Residential Code®
R201.3, R303.1.1, R303.2, R402.1.11, R403.3.2, R403.3.6, R403.6, R501.4
R406.3
R402.4.1.2

IEEE
Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc.
3 Park Avenue, 17th Floor
New York, NY 10016-5997
R403.5.1.2

NFPA
National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471
70—17: National Electrical Code
R501.4

NFRC
National Fenestration Rating Council, Inc.
6305 Ivy Lane, Suite 140
Greenbelt, MD 20770
100—2017: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Products U-factors
R303.1.3
R303.1.3
400—2017: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage
R402.4.3

RESNET
Residential Energy Services Network, Inc.
P.O. Box 4561
Oceanside, CA 92052-4561
R406.3, R406.6.1, R406.6.5
REFERENCED STANDARDS

RESNET—continued
R 402.4.1.2

UL
UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062

R 402.4.2

R 403.5.1.2

US-FTC
United States-Federal Trade Commission
600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20580

CFR Title 16 (2015): R-value Rule
R 303.1.4

WDMA
Window and Door Manufacturers Association
2025 M Street NW, Suite 800
Washington, DC 20036-3309

R 402.4.3

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym "ICC" and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
APPENDIX RA

SOLAR-READY PROVISIONS—DETACHED
ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS AND TOWNHOUSES

SEE SECTION R407
INDEX

A

ACCESS HATCHES .................................. R402.2.4

ADDITION
    Defined ............................................. R202
    Requirements ................................... R501.1.1, R502

ALTERATION
    Defined ............................................. R202
    Requirements ................................... 503

ADMINISTRATION .................................. Chapter 1

AIR BARRIER
    Installation ................ R402.4.1.1, Table R402.4.1.1
    Testing ........................................ R402.4.1.2

AIR INfiltrATION
    Requirements ................................... R402.4.1.2

AIR LEAKAGE .................................... R402.4, R403.3.3, R403.3.4

ALTERNATE MATERIALS ......................... R102

APPROVED
    Defined ............................................. R202

AUTOMATIC
    Defined ............................................. R202

ATMOSPHERIC VENTING .......................... Appendix RA
    Worst-case testing ............................ RA301

B

BASEMENT WALL
    Defined ............................................. R202
    Requirements ................................... R303.2.1, Table R402.1.2, R402.2.9

BELOW-GRADE WALLS (see BASEMENT WALLS)

BOARD OF APPEALS ............................. R109
    Qualifications of members ................ R109.3

BUILDING
    Defined ............................................. R202

BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE
    Air tightness ..................................... R402.4.1
    Compliance documentation ................. R103.2, R401.3
    Defined ............................................. R202
    Insulation ....................................... R303.1.1
    Insulation and fenestration criteria ...... R402.1.2
    Requirements ................................... R102.1.1, R402

C

CEILINGS ....................................... R402.2.1, R402.2.1, R402.2.2

CERTIFICATE ..................................... R401.3

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY ......................... R505

CIRCULATION SYSTEMS ......................... R403.5.1

CLIMATE ZONES ................................ R301

CODE OFFICIAL ................................ R202

COMMERICAL BUILDING ....................... R101.5

COMPLIANCE AND ENFORCEMENT ............ R101.5

CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA ................... R202

CONDITIONED SPACE ......................... R202

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS ................. R103

Amended ........................................ R103.4

APPROVAL ....................................... R103.3.1

Information required ....................... R103.2

Phased .......................................... R103.3.3

Previous ....................................... R103.3.2

Retention ..................................... R103.5

Thermal envelope depiction .............. R103.2.1

CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER .................... R202

CONTROLS ....................................... R403.1

Heat pump ...................................... R403.1.2

Heating and cooling ......................... R403.1

Service water heating ....................... R403.5

CRAWL SPACE WALL ......................... R202

Defined ............................................. R202

Requirements ................................... R303.2.1, Table R402.1.2, R402.2.4

Table R402.1.4, R402.1.4, R402.1.4, R402.1.4, R402.2.9

CRAWL SPACE WALL ......................... R202

Defined ............................................. R202

Requirements ................................... R303.2.1, Table R402.1.2, R403.3.1.6, R403.3.6, R403.3.7, R403.3.8

Table R402.1.4, R402.1.4, R402.2.9

Table R402.1.4, R402.1.4

DEFINITIONS ................................ Chapter 2

DEMAND REcirculation WATER SYSTEM .... R202

Defined ............................................. R202

Requirements ................................... R403.5.2

DESIGN CONDITIONS ......................... Chapter 3, R302

DOORS .......................................... R202

Attics and crawl spaces ................... R402.2.4

Default U-factors ............................ Table R303.1.3(2)

Opaque .......................................... R402.3.4

SHGC values ................................. Table R402.1.2

U-factors ....................................... R402.1.4

DUCT .......................................... R202

Defined ............................................. R202

Insulation ...................................... R103.2, R401.3, R403.3.1, R403.3.1.6, R403.3.6, R403.3.7, R403.3.8

Table R402.1.4, R402.1.4, R402.1.4

2020 CITY OF BOULDER ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE R-37
INDEX

Sealing ........................................ R103.2, R403.3.2
Tightness verification
  Postconstruction test ..................... R403.3.3
  Rough-in test ............................. R403.3.3
  Within conditioned space ............. R403.3.7
DUCT SYSTEM
  Defined .................................... R202
DWELLING UNIT
  Defined .................................... R202
  Multiple units ........................... R403.8
DYNAMIC GLAZING
  Defined .................................... R402.3.2
E
EAVE BAFFLE
  Installation ............................... R402.2.3
ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING .... R404
ENERGY ANALYSIS, ANNUAL
  Defined .................................... R202
ENERGY COST
  Defined .................................... R202
  Energy rating index ..................... R202, R406.3
  Energy rating index compliance alternative ... R406
  ERI-based compliance ................... R406.4
ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL
  Defined .................................... R202
ENVELOPE, BUILDING THERMAL
  Defined .................................... R202
ENVELOPE DESIGN PROCEDURES ........ R402
EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCIES ............. R103.2, R401.3
EQUIPMENT ROOM
  For fuel burning appliance .......... R402.4.4
EXISTING BUILDINGS ...................... Chapter 5
EXTERIOR WALL
  Defined .................................... R202
  Thermal performance ................... R402, R402.1.2
F
FEES ........................................... R104
  Refunds .................................. R104.5
  Related fees ............................. R104.4
  Schedule of permit fees .............. R104.2
FENESTRATION ................................ R303.1, R402.3, R402.3.2, R402.3.3
  Default U-factors ..................... Table R303.1.3(1)
  Defined .................................. R202
  Rating and labeling ................... R303.1.3, R402.1.2
  Replacement ............................ R402.3.5
  Requirements ........................... Table R402.1.2
FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT
  Defined .................................... R202
FIREPLACES ................................ R402.4.2
FLOORS
  Insulation ................................ R402.2.6
  Slab-on-grade insulation requirements .... R402.2.10
FOUNDATIONS
  Requirements ........................... Table R402.4.1.1
  G
GLAZED FENESTRATION ................... R402.3.2, R402.3.3
  H
HEAT PUMP ................................ R403.1.2
HEATED SLAB
  Defined .................................... R202
HEATING AND COOLING LOADS .......... R302.1, R403.1.2
HIGH-EFFICACY LAMPS
  Defined .................................... R202
HISTORIC BUILDING ...................... R202, R501.6
HOT WATER
  Piping insulation ....................... R403.5.3
HOT WATER BOILER
  Outdoor temperature setback .......... R403.2
HVAC SYSTEMS
  Tests
    Postconstruction ..................... R403.3.4
    Rough-in-test ......................... R403.3.4
  I
IDENTIFICATION (MATERIALS, EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEM) .......... R303.1
INDIRECTLY CONDITIONED SPACE
  (see CONDITIONED SPACE)
INfiltration, AIR LEAKAGE ............ R402.4
  Defined .................................... R202
INSPECTIONS ............................ R105
INSULATION
  Air-impermeable ....................... R202, Table R402.4.1.1
  Basement walls ......................... R402.2.9
  Ceilings with attic spaces .......... R402.2.1
  Ceilings without attic spaces ....... R402.2.2
  Crawl space walls ..................... R402.2.11
  Duct .................................... R403.3.1
  Eave baffle ............................ R402.2.3
Floors ........................................... R402.2.6, R402.2.8
Hot water piping .............................. R403.5.3
Identification ................................ R303.1, R303.1.2
Installation ................................... R303.1.1, R303.1.1.1,
                                   R303.1.2, R303.2,
                                   Table R402.4.1.1
Masonry veneer ............................... R402.2.12
Mass walls ................................. R402.2.5
Mechanical system piping ................. R403.4
Product rating ................................ R303.1.4
Protection of exposed foundation ......... R303.2.1
Protection of piping insulation .......... R403.2.1
Requirements ............................... Table R402.1.2, R402.2
Slab-on-grade floors ........................ R402.2.10
Steel-frame ceilings, walls and floors ... R402.2.6,
                                   Table R402.2.6
Sunroom ...................................... R402.2.13

L

Labeled
   Defined ....................................... R202
   Requirements ............................. R303.1.3, R402.4.3
Lighting Systems ............................ R404
   Recessed .................................. R402.4.5, R404
Listed
   Defined ..................................... R202
Log homes ................................... R402.1, Table R402.4.1.1
Low-Energy Buildings ........................ R402.1
Low-Voltage Lighting ........................ R202
Luminaire
   Sealed ...................................... R402.4.5

M

Maintenance Information ......................... R303.3
Manual
   Defined ..................................... R202
Manuals ..................................... R101.5.1, R303.3
Masonry Veneer
   Insulation .................................. R402.2.12
Mass
   Wall ........................................... Table 402.1.2, R402.2.5
Materials and Equipment ..................... R303
Mechanical Systems and Equipment .......... R403
Mechanical Ventilation ........................ R403.6,
                                   Table R403.6.1
Multiple Dwelling Units ....................... R403.8

O

Occupancy
   Requirements ............................ R101.4, R101.5
Opaque Door .................................. R202, R402.3.4

P

Permit (see Fees)
   Work commencing before permit ........ R104.4
Pipe Insulation ............................. R403.4, R403.5.3
Plans and Specifications ................... R103
Pools .......................................... R403.10
   Covers ..................................... R403.10.3
   Heaters .................................... R403.10.1
   Time switches ............................ R403.10.2
Proposed Design
   Defined ..................................... R202
Pumps
   Time switches ............................ R403.10.2, R403.5.1.1

R

R-Value
   Defined ..................................... R202
   Computation ................................ R402.1.3
   Wood frame to cold formed
   steel frame ceiling, wall and
   floor insulation R-values ............ Table R402.2.6
Readily Accessible
   Defined ..................................... R202
Referenced Standards ....................... R107, Chapter 6
Repair
   Defined ..................................... R202
   Requirements ............................. R504
Residential Building ........................ R101.5
   Compliance ................................ R101.5
   Defined ..................................... R202
   Energy rating index alternative .... R406
Roof Assembly
   Defined ..................................... R202
   Requirements ............................. R303.1.1.1, R402.2.2

S

Scope ........................................ R101.2
Service Hot Water
   Requirements ............................ R403.5
Sheathing, Insulating
   (see Insulating Sheathing)
Shgc
   (see Solar Heat Gain Coefficient)
SHUTOFF DAMPERS ........................................ R403.6
SKYLIGHTS ................................................. R303.1.3, R402.1.2, R402.3
SNOW MELT SYSTEM CONTROLS ....................... R403.9
SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC) ............ R103.2, Table R303.1.3(3), R401.3, Table R402.1.2, R402.1.4, R402.3.2, R402.3.3, R402.3.5, R402.5
Defined .................................................. R202
STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN
Defined .................................................. R202
STANDARDS, REFERENCED .............................. R107, Chapter 6
STEEL FRAMING .......................................... R402.2.6
STOP WORK ORDER ....................................... R108
Authority ................................................. R108.1
Emergencies ............................................. R108.3
Failure to comply ...................................... R108.4
Issuance .................................................. R108.2
SUNROOM .................................................. R402.2.13, R402.3.5
Defined .................................................. R202
Insulation ................................................ R402.2.13
SWIMMING POOLS ....................................... R403.10
THERMAL ISOLATION ................................. R402.2.13, R402.3.5
Defined .................................................. R202
THERMAL MASS (see MASS) ......................... R402.2.5
THERMAL RESISTANCE (see R-VALUE) ............. R402.2.6
THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE (see U-FACTOR)
THERMOSTAT ............................................. R403.1
Defined .................................................. R202
Controls ............................................... R403.1
Programmable ........................................ R403.1.1
TIME SWITCHES .......................................... R403.10.2
TOWNHOUSE (see RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS)

W
WALL
Above-grade, defined ................................ R202
Basement, defined .................................... R202
Installation ............................................. R402.2.9
Crawl space, defined ................................ R202
Installation ............................................. R402.2.11
Exterior, defined ..................................... R202
Mass ..................................................... R402.2.5
Steel-frame ............................................. R402.2.6, Table R402.2.6
With partial structural sheathing ..................... R402.2.7
WALLS (see EXTERIOR WALLS AND BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE)
WALLS ADJACENT TO UNCONDITIONED SPACE (see BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE)
WATER HEATING ........................................ R401.3, R403.5
WHOLE HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM
Defined .................................................. R202
System fan efficacy .................................. R403.6.1
WINDOW AREA (see FENESTRATION and GLAZING AREA)

U
U-FACTOR
Alternative ............................................ R402.1.4, Table R402.1.4, R402.1.5
Default door .......................................... Table R303.1.3(2)
Default glazed fenestration ......................... Table R303.1.3(1)
Defined ................................................ R202, R402.3.1, R402.5
Skylights .............................................. Table R402.1.2, R402.1.4, R402.3.5
Sunroom ............................................... R402.3.5

V
VALIDITY .................................................. R106
VAPOR RETARDER ....................................... R402.1.1

This material contains information which is proprietary to and copyrighted by International Code Council, Inc. The information copyrighted by the International Code Council, Inc., has been obtained and reproduced with permission. The acronym "ICC" and the ICC logo are trademarks and service marks of ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.